

# **Oracle® Communications**

## **Diameter Signaling Router**

C-Class Software Installation and Configuration

Procedure 2/2

Release 8.0/8.1

**E76181-03**

July 2017

## Oracle ® Communication Diameter Signaling Router DSR C-Class Software Installation and Configuration Procedure 2/2

Copyright © 2017 Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.



**CAUTION: Use only the Upgrade procedure included in the Upgrade Kit. Before upgrading any system, please access My Oracle Support (MOS) (<https://support.oracle.com>) and review any Technical Service Bulletins (TSBs) that relate to this upgrade.**

My Oracle Support (MOS) (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration.

Call the CAS main number at 1-800-223-1711 (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>.

See more information on MOS in the Appendix section.

**Note:** This document represents the 2<sup>nd</sup> part of the DSR Installation Process. Prior to executing this document, make sure that the 1<sup>st</sup> part was fully executed:

- **DSR Hardware and Software Installation:** Use document [7] as Part 1

## Table of Contents

TABLE OF CONTENTS .....	3
LIST OF PROCEDURES .....	5
TABLES AND FIGURES .....	7
<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>8</b>
1.1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE.....	8
1.2 REFERENCES .....	8
1.3 ACRONYMS .....	9
1.4 TERMINOLOGY .....	10
1.5 REVISION HISTORY .....	13
<b>2.0 GENERAL DESCRIPTION .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>3.0 INSTALL OVERVIEW .....</b>	<b>14</b>
3.1 REQUIRED MATERIALS .....	14
3.2 INSTALLATION OVERVIEW .....	14
3.2.1 Installation Strategy.....	15
3.2.2 SNMP Configuration.....	18
3.3 OPTIONAL FEATURES .....	19
<b>4.0 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE.....</b>	<b>20</b>
4.1 INSTALL AND CONFIGURE NOAM SERVERS .....	21
4.1.1 Load Application and TPD ISO onto the PMAC Server.....	21
4.1.2 Execute DSR Fast Deployment for NOAMs.....	26
4.1.3 Configure NOAMs .....	31
4.1.4 Install NetBackup Client (Optional).....	51
4.2 INSTALL AND CONFIGURE DR-NOAM SERVERS (OPTIONAL).....	52
4.2.1 Execute DSR Fast Deployment for DR-NOAMs.....	52
4.2.2 Pairing DR-NOAMs.....	63
4.2.3 Install NetBackup Client (Optional).....	67
4.3 INSTALL AND CONFIGURE SOAM SERVERS .....	68
4.3.1 Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades.....	68
4.3.2 Configure SOAMs .....	90
4.4 CONFIGURE MP SERVERS .....	106
4.4.1 Configure MP Blade Servers.....	106
4.4.2 Configure Signaling Devices .....	133
4.4.3 Configure DSCP (Optional) .....	138
4.4.4 Configure IP Front End Servers (Optional).....	142
4.5 SNMP CONFIGURATION .....	148
4.6 IDIH INSTALLATION AND CONFIGURATION (OPTIONAL).....	156
4.6.1 IDIH Installation .....	157
4.6.2 Post IDIH Installation Configuration.....	163
4.7 POST-INSTALL ACTIVITIES .....	185
4.7.1 Activate Optional Features .....	185
4.7.2 Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS).....	186

4.7.3 Shared Secret Encryption Key Revocation (RADIUS ONLY).....	193
4.7.4 Backup TVOE Configuration.....	193
4.7.5 Backup PMAC Application.....	196
4.7.6 Backup NOAM Database.....	199
4.7.7 Backup SOAM Database.....	202
4.7.8 Enable/Disable DTLS (SCTP Diameter Connections Only).....	204
<b>APPENDIX A: SAMPLE NETWORK ELEMENT AND HARDWARE PROFILES .....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>APPENDIX B: CONFIGURING FOR TVOE ILO ACCESS .....</b>	<b>208</b>
<b>APPENDIX C: TVOE ILO ACCESS .....</b>	<b>210</b>
<b>APPENDIX D: TVOE ILO4 GUI ACCESS .....</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>APPENDIX E: CHANGING THE TVOE ILO ADDRESS .....</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>APPENDIX F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM CONSOLE ILO ACCESS .....</b>	<b>216</b>
<b>APPENDIX G: LIST OF FREQUENTLY USED TIME ZONES.....</b>	<b>218</b>
<b>APPENDIX H: APPLICATION NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALLATION PROCEDURES.....</b>	<b>219</b>
<i>Appendix H.1: NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL USING PLATCFG.....</i>	<i>219</i>
<i>Appendix H.2: NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL/UPGRADE WITH NBAUTOINSTALL .....</i>	<i>226</i>
<i>Appendix H.3: CREATE NETBACKUP CLIENT CONFIG FILE .....</i>	<i>228</i>
<i>Appendix H.4: OPEN PORTS FOR NETBACKUP CLIENT SOFTWARE .....</i>	<i>230</i>
<b>APPENDIX I: IDIH FAST DEPLOYMENT CONFIGURATION.....</b>	<b>232</b>
<b>APPENDIX J: IDIH EXTERNAL DRIVE REMOVAL.....</b>	<b>235</b>
<b>APPENDIX K: DSR FAST DEPLOYMENT CONFIGURATION .....</b>	<b>240</b>
<b>APPENDIX L: GROWTH/DE-GROWTH .....</b>	<b>243</b>
<i>Appendix L.1: Growth.....</i>	<i>243</i>
<i>Appendix L.2: De-Growth .....</i>	<i>269</i>
<b>APPENDIX O: RESTORING SNMP CONFIGURATION TO SNMPV3 (OPTIONAL).....</b>	<b>288</b>
<b>APPENDIX P: MY ORACLE SUPPORT (MOS).....</b>	<b>289</b>

## List of Procedures

Procedure 1: Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server .....	21
Procedure 2: Configure NOAM Servers .....	26
Procedure 3: Configure the First NOAM NE and Server .....	31
Procedure 4: Configure the NOAM Server Group .....	38
Procedure 5: Configure the Second NOAM Server .....	42
Procedure 6: Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration.....	46
Procedure 7: Install NetBackup Client .....	51
Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site .....	52
Procedure 9: Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional) .....	63
Procedure 10: Install NetBackup Client.....	67
Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades .....	68
Procedure 12: Create SOAM Guest VMs.....	80
Procedure 13: IPM Blades and VMs .....	84
Procedure 14: Install the Application Software.....	86
Procedure 15: Configure SOAM NE.....	90
Procedure 16: Configure the SOAM Servers.....	92
Procedure 17: Configure the SOAM Server Group .....	98
Procedure 18: Activate PCA (PCA Only).....	105
Procedure 19: Activate DCA (DCA Only) .....	106
Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers.....	106
Procedure 21: Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA/DCA ONLY) .....	117
Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s).....	121
Procedure 23: Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only) .....	131
Procedure 24: Configure the Signaling Network Routes .....	133
Procedure 25: Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic .....	138
Procedure 26: IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration .....	142
Procedure 27: Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s).....	148
Procedure 28: IDIH Configuration .....	157
Procedure 29: Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH .....	163
Procedure 30: IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (Optional) .....	166
Procedure 31: IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR.....	172
Procedure 32: IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server (Optional) .....	176
Procedure 33: IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server (Optional).....	178
Procedure 34: IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface (Optional) .....	180
Procedure 35: IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File (Optional).....	181
Procedure 36: IDIH Configuration: Change Alarm Ignore List (Optional) .....	183
Procedure 37: Activate Optional Features .....	185
Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS).....	186
Procedure 39: Shared secret encryption key revocation (RADIUS Only) .....	193

Procedure 40: Backup TVOE Configuration .....	193
Procedure 41: Backup PMAC Application.....	196
Procedure 42: NOAM Database Backup.....	199
Procedure 43: SOAM Database Backup.....	202
Procedure 44: Enable/Disable DTLS (SCTP Diameter Connections Only).....	204
Appendix B 1: Connecting to the TVOE iLO.....	208
Appendix C 1: Accessing the TVOE iLO .....	210
Appendix D 1: TVOE iLO4 GUI Access.....	212
Appendix E 1: Changing the TVOE iLO Address.....	214
Appendix F 1: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access .....	216
Appendix H 1: Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg) .....	219
Appendix H 2: Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL) .....	226
Appendix H 3: Create NetBackup Client Config File .....	228
Appendix H 4: Open ports for NetBackup Client Software .....	230
Appendix J 1: IDIH External Drive Removal .....	235
Appendix L.1.1 Perform Backups .....	244
Appendix L.1.2 Perform Health Check.....	245
Appendix L.1.3 Adding a new Server/VMs.....	247
Appendix L.1.4 Growth: DR-NOAM.....	248
Appendix L.1.5 Growth: SOAM spare (PCA Only).....	249
Appendix L.1.6 Growth: MP.....	250
Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system).....	250
Appendix L.1.7 Post Growth Health Check.....	266
Appendix L.1.8 Post Growth Backups .....	268
Appendix L.2.1 Perform Backups .....	269
Appendix L.2.2 Perform Health Check.....	270
Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group.....	273
Appendix L.2.7 Post Growth Health Check.....	284
Appendix L.1.8 Post Growth Backups .....	287

## Tables and Figures

TABLE 1 ACRONYMS .....	9
FIGURE 1 EXAMPLE OF AN INSTRUCTION THAT INDICATES THE SERVER TO WHICH IT APPLIES .....	10
TABLE 2 TERMINOLOGY .....	10
FIGURE 2 EXAMPLE OF INITIAL APPLICATION INSTALLATION PATH .....	14
FIGURE 3 DSR INSTALLATION: HIGH LEVEL SEQUENCE .....	16
FIGURE 4 DSR SINGLE SITE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE MAP .....	17
FIGURE 5 EXAMPLE NETWORK ELEMENT XML FILE .....	205
FIGURE 6 EXAMPLE SERVER HARDWARE PROFILE XML-HP C-CLASS BLADE.....	206
FIGURE 7 EXAMPLE SERVER HARDWARE PROFILE XML- VIRTUAL GUEST ON TVOE.....	207
TABLE 4 TIME ZONES .....	218

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 Purpose and Scope

This document describes the application-related installation procedures for an HP C-class Diameter Signaling Router system.

This document assumes that platform-related configuration has already been done. Before executing this document, please ensure that all procedures from [7] have already been performed successfully.

The audience for this document includes Oracle customers as well as these groups: Software System, Product Verification, Documentation, and Customer Service including Software Operations and First Office Application.

In scenarios where the DSR installation has already been executed, and system growth, de-growth is necessary; refer to **Appendix L: Growth/De-Growth**.

### 1.2 References

- [1] DSR Meta Administration Feature Activation Procedure
- [2] DSR Full Address Based Resolution (FABR) Feature Activation Procedure
- [3] DSR Range Based Address Resolution (RBAR) Feature Procedure
- [4] SDS SW Installation and Configuration Guide
- [5] MAP-Diameter IWF Feature Activation Procedure
- [6] DSR IPv6 Migration Guide
- [7] DSR Hardware and Software Installation Part 1
- [8] DSR GLA Feature Activation Procedure
- [9] DSR PCA Activation Guide
- [10] DSR DTLS Feature Activation Procedure
- [11] DSR Radius Shared secret encryption key revocation MOP MO008572
- [12] Platform 7.2 Configuration Procedure
- [13] DSR Security Guide
- [14] DCA Framework and Application Activation and Deactivation Guide

### 1.3 Acronyms

An alphabetized list of acronyms used in the document

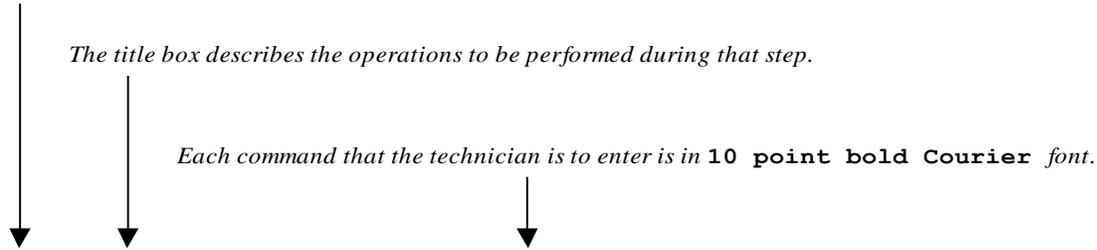
Table 1 Acronyms

Acronym	Definition
<b>BIOS</b>	Basic Input Output System
<b>CD</b>	Compact Disk
<b>DVD</b>	Digital Versatile Disc
<b>EBIPA</b>	Enclosure Bay IP Addressing
<b>FRU</b>	Field Replaceable Unit
<b>HP c-Class</b>	HP blade server offering
<b>iLO</b>	Integrated Lights Out manager
<b>IPM</b>	Initial Product Manufacture – the process of installing TPD on a hardware platform
<b>MSA</b>	Modular Smart Array
<b>NB</b>	NetBackup
<b>OA</b>	HP Onboard Administrator
<b>OS</b>	Operating System (e.g. TPD)
<b>RMS</b>	Rack Mounted Server
<b>PMAC</b>	Platform Management & Configuration
<b>SAN</b>	Storage Area Network
<b>SFTP</b>	Secure File Transfer Protocol
<b>SNMP</b>	Simple Network Management Protocol
<b>TPD</b>	Tekelec Platform Distribution
<b>TVOE</b>	Tekelec Virtual Operating Environment
<b>VM</b>	Virtual Machine
<b>VSP</b>	Virtual Serial Port
<b>IPFE</b>	IP Front End
<b>PCA</b>	Policy and Charging Application
<b>IDIH</b>	Integrated Diameter Intelligence Hub

## 1.4 Terminology

Multiple server types may be involved with the procedures in this manual. Therefore, most steps in the written procedures begin with the name or type of server to which the step applies. For example:

*Each step has a checkbox for every command within the step that the technician should check to keep track of the progress of the procedure.*



5	<b>ServerX:</b> Connect to the console of the server	Establish a connection to the server using cu on the terminal server/console.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<code>\$ cu -l /dev/ttyS7</code>	

Figure 1 Example of an instruction that indicates the server to which it applies

Table 2 Terminology

<b>Management Server</b>	HP ProLiant DL360/ DL380 deployed to run TVOE and host a virtualized PMAC application. Can also host a virtualized NOAM or IDIH. It is also used to configure the Aggregation switches (via the PM&C) and to serve other configuration purposes.
<b>PMAC Application</b>	PMAC is an application that provides platform-level management functionality for HP G6/G8/G9 system, such as the capability to manage and provision platform components of the system so it can host applications.

<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Site</b></p>	<p>Applicable for various applications, a Site is type of "Place". A Place is configured object that allows servers to be associated with a physical location.</p> <p>A Site place allows servers to be associated with a physical site. For example, Sites may be configured for Atlanta, Charlotte, and Chicago. Every server is associated with exactly one Site when the server is configured.</p> <p>For the Policy &amp; Charging DRA application, when configuring a Site only put DA-MPs and SBR MP servers in the site. Do not add NOAM, SOAM or IPFE MPs to a Site</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Place Association</b></p>	<p>Applicable for various applications, a "Place Association" is a configured object that allows Places to be grouped together. A Place can be a member of more than one Place Association.</p> <p>The Policy &amp; Charging DRA application defines two Place Association Types: Policy Binding Region and Policy &amp; Charging Mated Sites.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Two Site Redundancy</b></p>	<p>Two Site Redundancy is a data durability configuration in which Policy and Charging data is unaffected by the loss of one site in a Policy &amp; Charging Mated Sites Place Association containing two sites.</p> <p>Two Site Redundancy is a feature provided by Server Group configuration. This feature provides geographic redundancy. Some Server Groups can be configured with servers located in two geographically separate Sites(locations). This feature will ensure that there is always a functioning Active server in a Server Group even if all the servers in a single site fail.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Three Site Redundancy</b></p>	<p>Three Site Redundancy is a data durability configuration in which Policy and Charging data is unaffected by the loss of two sites in a Policy &amp; Charging Mated Sites Place Association containing three sites.</p> <p>Three Site Redundancy is a feature provided by Server Groups configuration. This feature provides geographic redundancy. Some Server Groups can be configured with servers located in three geographically separate Sites(locations). This feature will ensure that there is always a functioning Active server in a Server Group even if all the servers in two sites fail.</p>

<p><b>Session Binding Repository Server Group Redundancy</b></p>	<p>The DCA application may use SBR Server Groups to store Application Session data. The SBR Server Groups with support both Two and Three Site Redundancy. The Server Group Function name is “Session and Binding Repository”.</p>
<p><b>SBR Server Group Redundancy</b></p>	<p>The Policy and Charging application will use SBR Server Groups to store the application data. The SBR Server Groups will support both Two and Three Site Redundancy. The Server Group Function name is “SBR”.</p>
<p><b>Server Group Primary Site</b></p>	<p>A Server Group Primary Site is a term used to represent the principle location within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites (Places). For the Policy &amp; Charging DRA application, these Sites (Places) are all configured within a single “Policy and Charging Mated Sites” Place Association.</p> <p>For the Diameter Custom application, these Sites (Places) are configured in “Applications Region” Place Association.</p> <p>The Primary Site may be in a different Site (Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group .</p> <p>A Primary Site is described as the location in which the Active and Standby servers to reside, however there cannot be any Preferred Spare servers within this location. All SOAM and SBR Server Groups will have a Primary Site.</p>
<p><b>Server Group Secondary Site</b></p>	<p>A Server Group Secondary Site is a term used to represent location in addition to the Primary Site within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites (Places). For the Policy &amp; Charging DRA application, these Sites (Places) are all configured within a single “Policy and Charging Mated Sites” Place Association.</p> <p>For the Diameter Custom application, these Sites (Places) are configured in “Applications Region” Place Association.</p> <p>The Secondary Site may be in a different Site (Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group.</p> <p>A Secondary Site is described as the location in which only Preferred Spare servers reside. The Active and Standby servers cannot reside within this location. If Two or Three Site Redundancy is wanted, a Secondary Site is required for all SOAM and SBR Server Groups.</p>

<b>Server Group Tertiary Site</b>	<p>A Server Group Tertiary Site is a term used to represent location in addition to the Primary &amp; Secondary Sites within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites(Places). For the Policy &amp; Charging DRA application, these Sites(Places) are all configured within a single "Policy and Charging Mated Sites" Place Association.</p> <p>The Tertiary Site may be in a different Site(Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group .</p> <p>A Tertiary Site is described as the location in which only Preferred Spare servers reside. The Active and Standby servers cannot reside within this location. A Tertiary Site only applies if Three Site Redundancy is wanted for SOAM and SBR Server Groups.</p>
<b>Software Centric</b>	<p>The business practice of delivering an Oracle software product, while relying upon the customer to procure the requisite hardware components. Oracle provides the hardware specifications, but does not provide the hardware, and is not responsible for hardware installation, configuration, or maintenance.</p>
<b>Enablement</b>	<p>The business practice of providing support services (hardware, software, documentation, etc) that enable a 3rd party entity to install, configuration, and maintain Oracle products for Oracle customers.</p>

## 1.5 Revision History

<b>Date</b>	<b>Description</b>
October 2016	Initial Release

## 2.0 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

This document defines the steps to execute the initial installation of the Diameter Signaling Router (DSR) application on new HP C-Class Hardware.

DSR installation paths are shown in the figures below. The general timeline for all processes to perform a software installation/configuration and upgrade is also included below.

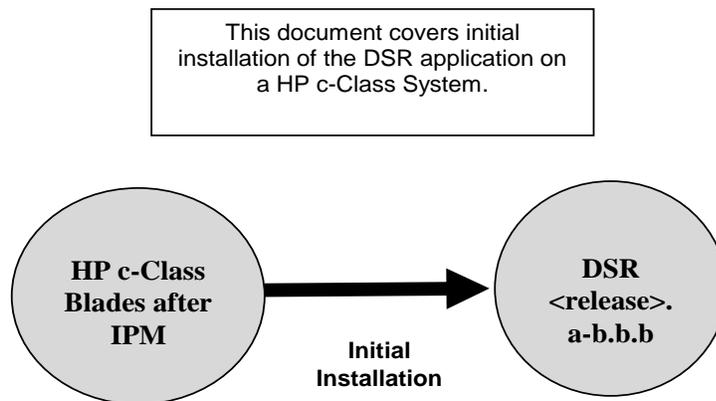


Figure 2 Example of Initial Application Installation Path

## 3.0 INSTALL OVERVIEW

This section provides a brief overview of the recommended method for installing DSR software that is on an HP c-Class system. The basic install process and approximate time required is outlined in **Figure 4**.

### 3.1 Required Materials

1. One (1) target release Application Media, or a target-release ISO
2. One (1) ISO of TPD release, or later shipping baseline as per Oracle ECO

### 3.2 Installation Overview

This section describes the overall strategy to be employed for a single or multi-site DSR installation. It also lists the procedures required for installation with estimated times. **Section 3.2.1 Installation Strategy** discusses the overall install strategy and includes an installation flow chart that can be used to determine exactly which procedures should be run for an installation.

### 3.2.1 Installation Strategy

A successful installation of DSR requires careful planning and assessment of all configuration materials and installation variables. Once a site survey has been conducted with the customer, the installer should use this section to map out the exact procedure list that will be executed at each site.

**Figure 3** illustrates the overall process that each DSR installation will involve. In summary:

- 1) An overall installation requirement is decided upon. Among the data that should be collected:
  - The total number of sites
  - The number of servers at each site and their role(s)
  - Does DSR's networking interface terminate on a Layer 2 or Layer 3 boundary?
  - Number of enclosures at each site -- if any at all.
  - Will NOAMs use rack-mount servers or server blades?
  - (Per Site) Will MP's be in N+ 0 configurations or in active/standby?
  - What time zone should be used across the entire collection of DSR sites?
  - Will SNMP traps be viewed at the NOAM, or will an external NMS be used? (Or both?)
- 2) A site survey (NAPD) is conducted with the customer to determine exact networking and site details. **Note:** XMI and IMI addresses are difficult to change once configured. It is very important that these addresses are well planned and not expected to change after a site is installed.
- 3) For each SOAM /MP/DR-NOAM only site (i.e. sites NOT containing the main NOAM server), the installer will execute the procedures in document [7] to set up the PMAC, HP enclosures, and switches. Then, using the procedures in this document, all servers will be IPM-ed with the proper TPD and DSR application ISO image. **Figure 4** details the exact procedures that are to be executed for the 2nd part of this install. When this is complete, all non-NOAM sites will be reachable through the network and ready for further installation when the primary NOAM site is brought up.
- 4) The installer will then move to the "main" site that will contain the primary NOAM. Again, [7] will be executed for this site. Then, moving on to the procedures in this document, **Figure 4** is consulted to determine the procedure list. During this install, the user will "bring up" the other sub-sites (if they exist) that were configured in step 3. For single sites where the NOAM/SOAM/MPs are all located together, then step 3 is skipped and the entire install is covered by this step.
- 5) Once the primary NOAM site has been installed according to [7] and this document, then full DSR installation is complete.

**Note:** An alternative install strategy will swap steps 3 & 4. The main NOAM site is installed first, and then the sub-sites (DR-NOAM, SOAM/MP only) are installed and brought up on the NOAM as they are configured. This approach is perfectly valid, but is not reflected in the flow-charts/diagrams shown here.

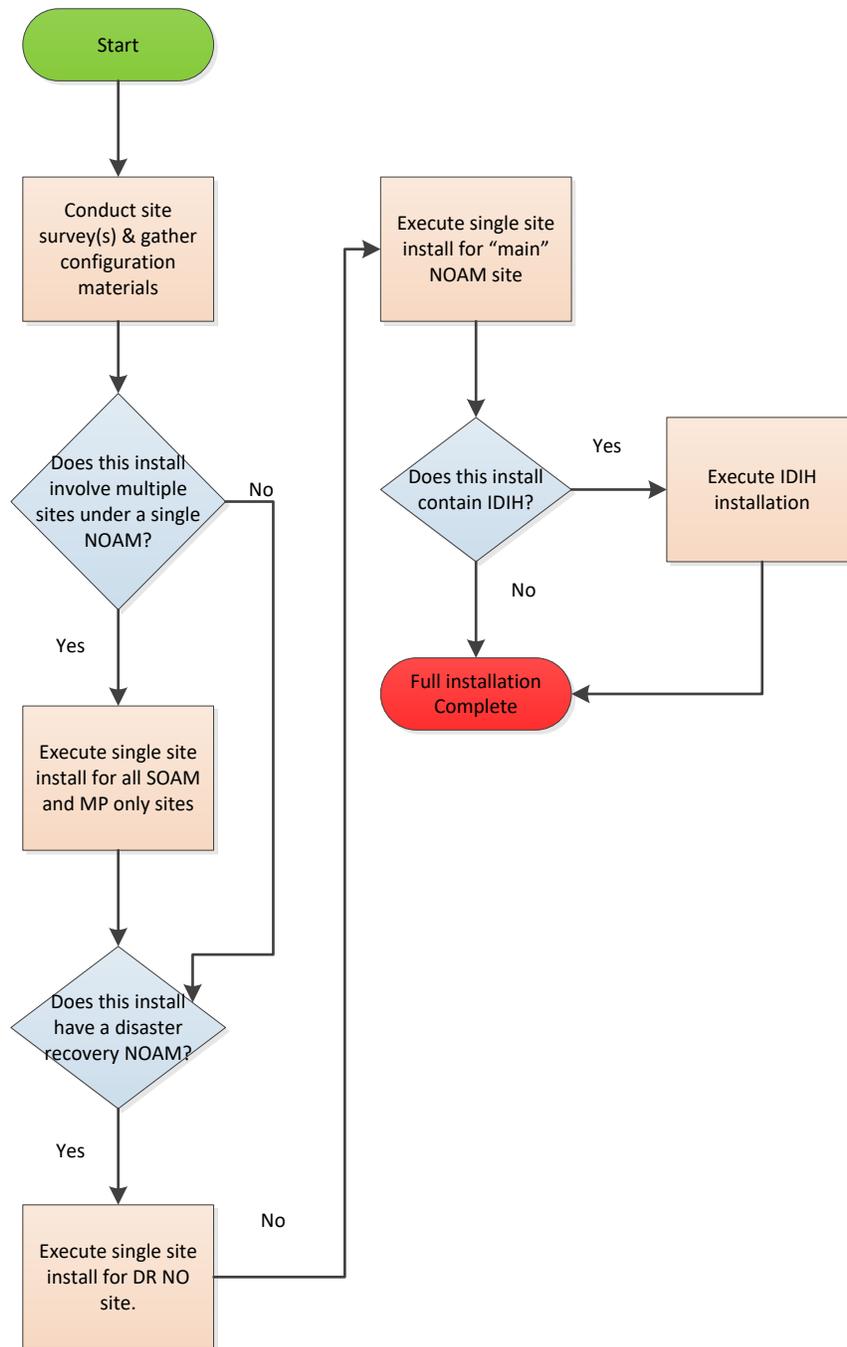


Figure 3 DSR Installation: High Level Sequence

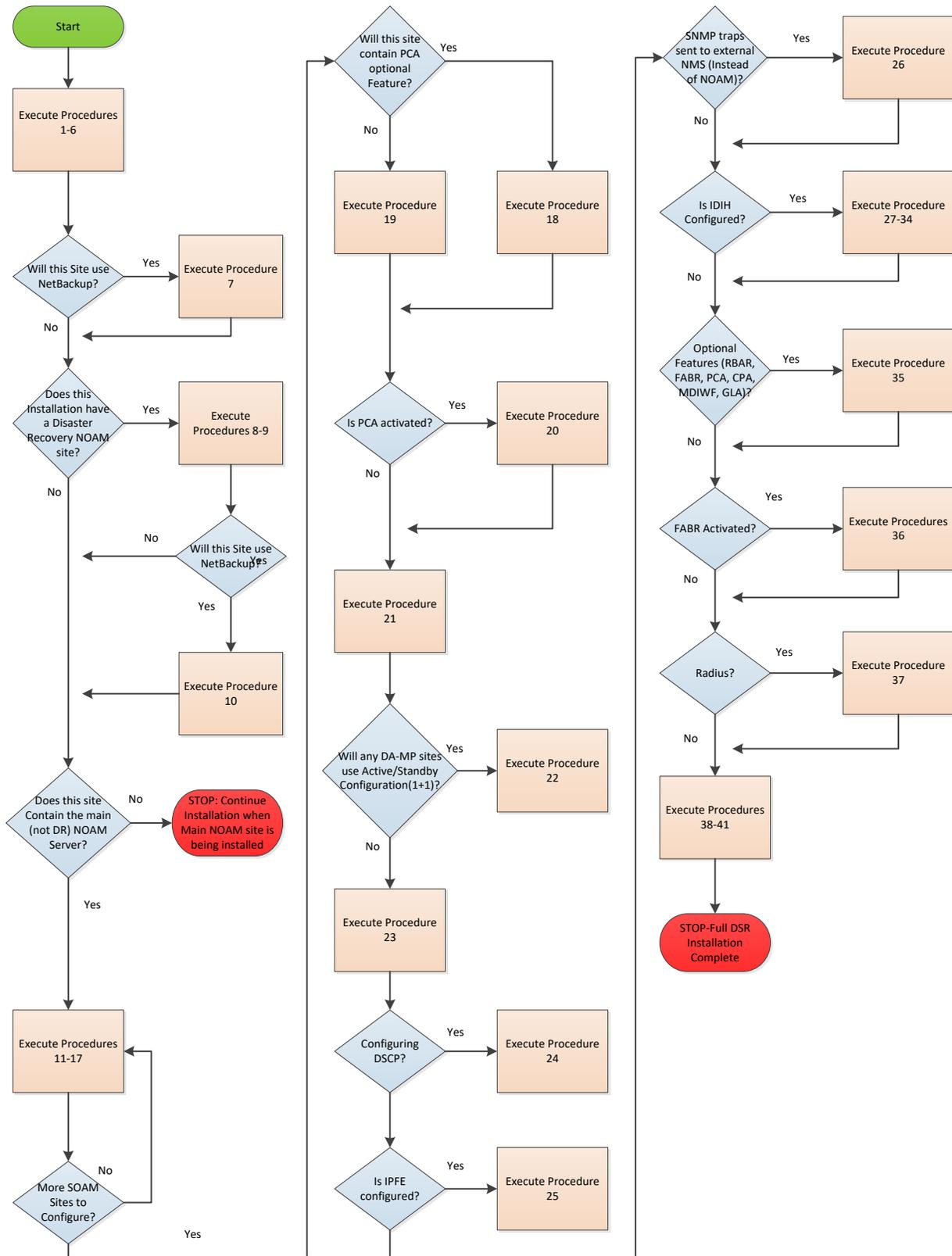


Figure 4 DSR Single Site Installation Procedure Map

### 3.2.2 SNMP Configuration

The network-wide plan for SNMP configuration should be decided upon before DSR installation proceeds. This section provides some recommendations for these decisions.

SNMP traps can originate from the following entities in a DSR installation:

- DSR Application Servers (NOAM, SOAM, MPs of all types)
- DSR Auxiliary Components (OA, Switches, TVOE hosts, PMAC)

DSR application servers can be configured to:

1. Send all their SNMP traps to the NOAM via merging from their local SOAM. All traps will terminate at the NOAM and be viewable from the NOAM GUI (entire network) and the SOAM GUI (site specific). Traps are displayed on the GUI both as alarms and logged in trap history. This is the default configuration option and no changes are required for this to take effect.
2. Send all their SNMP traps to an external Network Management Station (NMS). The traps will be seen at the SOAM AND/OR NOAM as alarms AND they will be viewable at the configured NMS(s) as traps.

Application server SNMP configuration is done from the NOAM GUI, near the end of DSR installation. See the procedure list for details.

DSR auxiliary components must have their SNMP trap destinations set explicitly. Trap destinations can be the NOAM VIP, the SOAMP VIP, or an external (customer) NMS. The recommended configuration is as follows:

The following components:

- PMAC (TVOE)
- PMAC (App)
- OAs
- All Switch types (4948, 3020, 6120.6125G)
- TVOE for DSR Servers

Should have their SNMP trap destinations set to:

1. The local SOAM VIP
2. The customer NMS, if available

### 3.3 Optional Features

When DSR installation is complete, further configuration and/or installation steps will need to be taken for optional features that may be present in this deployment. Please refer to these documents for the post-DSR install configuration steps needed for their components.

**TABLE 2 OPTIONAL FEATURES**

<b>Feature</b>	<b>Document</b>
Diameter Mediation	DSR Meta Administration Feature Activation Procedure, E58661
Policy and Charging Application (PCA)	DSR PCA Activation Guide, E81528
Diameter Custom Applications (DCA)	DCA Framework and Application Activation and Deactivation Guide, E76934
Full Address Based Resolution (FABR)	DSR FABR Feature Activation Procedure, E78925
Range Based Address Resolution (RBAR)	DSR RBAR Feature Activation Procedure, E78926
Map-Diameter Interworking (MAP-IWF)	DSR MAP-Diameter IWF Feature Activation Procedure, E78927
Gateway Location Application (GLA)	DSR GLA Feature Activation Procedure, E78946
Host Intrusion Detection System (HIDS)	DSR Security Guide, E76974 (Section 3.2)

## 4.0 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

As mentioned earlier, the hardware installation and network cabling should be done before executing the procedures in this document. It is assumed that at this point, the user has access to:

- ILO consoles of all server blades at all sites
- ssh access to the PMAC servers at all sites
- GUI access to PMAC servers at all sites
- A configuration station with a web browser, ssh client, and scp client.

### SUDO

As a non-root user (*admusr*), many commands (*when run as admusr*) now require the use of '*sudo*'.

### IPv6

Standard IPv6 formats for IPv6 and prefix can be used in all IP configuration screens which enable the DSR to be run in an IPv6 only environment. When using IPv6 for XMI and management, you must place the IPv6 address in brackets (highlighted in red below), example as followed:

```
https:// [<IPv6 address>]
```

If a dual-stack (IPv4 & IPv6) network is required, it is recommended that you first configure the topology, and then "Migrate" to IPv6. Reference [6] for instructions on how to accomplish this IPv6 migration.

## 4.1 Install and Configure NOAM Servers

### 4.1.1 Load Application and TPD ISO onto the PMAC Server

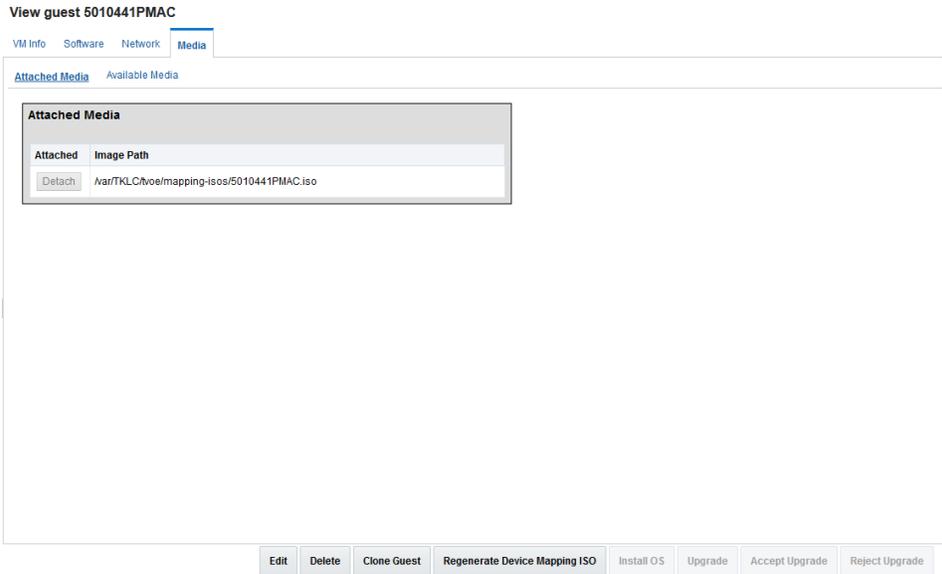
#### Procedure 1: Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will load the DSR Application and TPD ISO into the PMAC Server</p> <p><b>Needed material:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Application Media</li> </ul> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>TVOE Host:</b> Load Application ISO	<p>Add the Application ISO image to the PM&amp;C, this can be done in one of three ways:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insert the Application CD required by the application into the removable media drive.</li> <li>2. Attach the USB device containing the ISO image to a USB port.</li> <li>3. Copy the Application iso file to the PM&amp;C server into the <b>“/var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr/”</b> directory as pmacftpusr user:</li> </ol> <p>cd into the directory where your ISO image is located on the <b>TVOE Host</b> (<i>not on the PM&amp;C server</i>)</p> <p>Using sftp, connect to the PM&amp;C server</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ sftp pmacftpusr@&lt;pmac_management_network_ip&gt; \$ put &lt;image&gt;.iso</pre> <p>After the image transfer is 100% complete, close the connection:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ quit</pre>

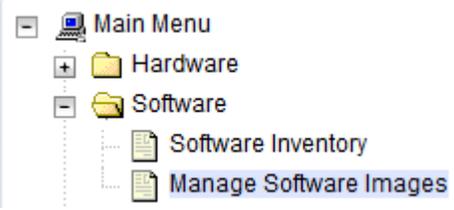
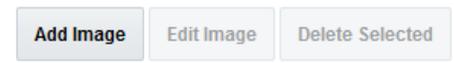
**Procedure 1: Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server**

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login	Open web browser and enter:  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</div> Login as <i>guiadmin</i> user:  <div style="text-align: center;"></div> <div><b>Oracle System Login</b></div> <div style="text-align: right;">Tue Jun 7 13:49:06 2016 EDT</div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"><p><b>Log In</b> Enter your username and password to log in</p><p>Username: <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p><p>Password: <input style="width: 100px;" type="password"/></p><p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p><p><input type="button" value="Log In"/></p></div> <div style="text-align: center;"><small>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 9.0, 10.0, or 11.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</small></div> <div style="text-align: center;"><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></div> <div style="text-align: center;"><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></div>
-------------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 1: Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server**

3	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Attach the software Image to the PMAC Guest	<p>If in Step 1 the ISO image was transferred directly to the PM&amp;C guest via sftp, skip the rest of this step and continue with step 4. If the image is on a CD or USB device, continue with this step.</p> <p>In the PM&amp;C GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b>. Select the PMAC guest. On the resulting <b>"View VM Guest"</b> page, select the <b>Media</b> tab.</p> <p>Under the <b>Media</b> tab, find the ISO image in the <b>"Available Media"</b> list, and click its <b>Attach</b> button. After a pause, the image will appear in the <b>"Attached Media"</b> list.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'View guest 5010441PMAC' page with the 'Media' tab selected. The 'Attached Media' section contains a table with the following data:</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Attached</th><th>Image Path</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td><input type="button" value="Detach"/></td><td>/var/TKL_C/voe/mapping-isos/5010441PMAC.iso</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>At the bottom of the page, there are several buttons: Edit, Delete, Clone Guest, Regenerate Device Mapping ISO, Install OS, Upgrade, Accept Upgrade, and Reject Upgrade.</p>	Attached	Image Path	<input type="button" value="Detach"/>	/var/TKL_C/voe/mapping-isos/5010441PMAC.iso
Attached	Image Path					
<input type="button" value="Detach"/>	/var/TKL_C/voe/mapping-isos/5010441PMAC.iso					

**Procedure 1: Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server**

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b></p> <p>Add Application Image</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Manage Software Images</b></p>  <p>Press <b>Add Image</b> button. Use the drop down to select the image.</p>  <p>If the image was supplied on a CD or a USB drive, it will appear as a virtual device ("<b>device://...</b>"). These devices are assigned in numerical order as CD and USB images become available on the Management Server. The first virtual device is reserved for internal use by TVOE and PMAC; therefore, the iso image of interest is normally present on the second device, "<b>device://dev/sr1</b>". If one or more CD or USB-based images were already present on the Management Server before you started this procedure, choose a correspondingly higher device number.</p> <p>If in Step 1 the image was transferred to PMAC via sftp it will appear in the list as a local file "<b>/var/TKLC/...</b>".</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Software -&gt; Manage Software Images [Add Image]</b></p> <hr/> <p>Images may be added from any of these sources:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle-provided media in the PM&amp;C host's CD/DVD drive (Refer to Note)</li> <li>• USB media attached to the PM&amp;C's host (Refer to Note)</li> <li>• External mounts. Prefix the directory with "extfile://".</li> <li>• These local search paths:       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ /var/TKLC/upgrade#.iso</li> <li>◦ /var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr#.iso</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Note: CD and USB images mounted on PM&amp;C's VM host must first be made accessible to the PM&amp;C VM gu</p> <p>Path: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Description: <input type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p><input type="button" value="Add New Image"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> <p>Select the appropriate path and Press <b>Add New Image</b> button.</p> <p>You may check the progress using the <b>Task Monitoring</b> link. Observe the green bar indicating success.</p> <p>Once the green bar is displayed, remove the DSR application Media from the optical drive of the management server.</p>
------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 1: Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server**

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Load TPD ISO	If the TPD ISO hasn't been loaded onto the PMAC already, repeat <b>steps 1 through 4</b> to load it using the TPD media or ISO.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 4.1.2 Execute DSR Fast Deployment for NOAMs

#### Procedure 2: Configure NOAM Servers

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will extend the TVOE networking configuration on the First RMS server (if necessary), configure the networking on additional rack mount servers, create the NOAM VMs, and deploy the DSR and TPD images.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE and PMAC (virtualized) have been installed on the First RMS Server as described in [7]</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>TVOE Host (Not PMAC):</b> Configure Control Network Bond for Back-Back Configurations</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the second RMS server via the control IP address accessed from the site PMAC. Login as <i>admusr</i>.</p> <p>If the control network for the RMS servers consists of direct connections between the servers with no intervening switches (known as a "back-to-back" configuration), execute this step to set the primary interface of bond0 to &lt;ethernet_interface_1&gt;, otherwise <b>skip to the next step</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> Section "TVOE Network Configuration" step 2 should have already been executed on the TVOE host which hosts the PMAC server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The site information for this system will determine the network interfaces (network devices, bonds, and bond enslaved devices) to configure.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=bond0 -- primary=eth01 Interface bond0 updated</pre> </div>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC server, login as <i>admusr</i>.</p>

**Procedure 2: Configure NOAM Servers**

3 □	<b>PMAC Server:</b> Update the DSR Fast Deployment template (Part 1)	<p>Perform the following command to navigate to the directory containing the DSR fast deployment template:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ cd /usr/TKLC/smac/etc</pre> <p>DSR Fast Deployment Template Names:</p> <p><b>NOAM on Rack Mount Servers:</b> DSR_NOAM_FD_RMS.xml  <b>NOAM on Blade Servers:</b> DSR_NOAM_FD_Blade.xml</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the fast deployment template is not present, then please re-execute section "Setup PM&amp;C" step 10, sub step C from [7].</p> <p>Update the following items within the Fast deployment xml:</p> <p><b>TPD and DSR ISO:</b></p> <pre>&lt;software&gt;   &lt;!--Target TPD release Image here --&gt;   &lt;image id="tpd"&gt;     &lt;name&gt;TPD.install-7.0.2.0.0_86.34.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64&lt;/name&gt;   &lt;/image&gt;   &lt;!--Target DSR release Image here --&gt;   &lt;image id="dsr"&gt;     &lt;name&gt;DSR-8.0.0.0_80.8.0-x86_64&lt;/name&gt;   &lt;/image&gt; &lt;/software&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> These are the images uploaded from Section 4.1.1 Load Application and TPD ISO onto the PMAC Server. Do <b>NOT</b> append '.iso' to the image name. To copy and paste the image name from the command line, issue the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ ls /var/TKLC/smac/image/repository</pre>
--------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

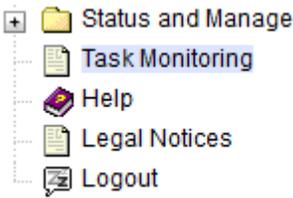
**Procedure 2: Configure NOAM Servers**

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Update the DSR Fast Deployment template for Bond 1 – Optional (Part 2)</p>	<p><b>Bond 1 Creation:</b> <b>Skip this step if Bond1 will not be created</b></p> <p>Uncomment the following items from <b>BOTH</b> tvoe host id="NOAM1" and tvoe host id="NOAM2" by removing the encapsulated '&lt;!--' '--&gt;' brackets as highlighted below:</p> <p>Update the Ethernet interfaces that are to be enslaved by bond1.</p> <pre>&lt;!-- &lt;tpdinterface id="bond1"&gt; &lt;device&gt;bond1&lt;/device&gt; &lt;type&gt;Bonding&lt;/type&gt; &lt;bonddata&gt; &lt;bondinterfaces&gt;&lt;bond1_eth_interface1&gt;,&lt;bond1_eth_interface2&gt;&lt;/bondinterfaces&gt; &lt;bondopts&gt;mode=active-backup,miimon=100&lt;/bondopts&gt; &lt;/bonddata&gt; &lt;onboot&gt;yes&lt;/onboot&gt; &lt;bootproto&gt;none&lt;/bootproto&gt; &lt;/tpdinterface&gt; --&gt;</pre>
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Update the DSR Fast Deployment template management/xmi combination (Part 3)</p>	<p><b>Only execute this step if your management network and xmi networks are combined, otherwise skip this step.</b></p> <p>Modify the template to reflect the following on <b>BOTH</b> tvoe host id="NOAM1" and tvoe host id="NOAM2":</p> <p><b>Remove</b> the following stanzas:</p> <pre>&lt;mgmtbondinterface&gt; &lt;mgmtvlan&gt; &lt;mgmtsubnet&gt; &lt;mgmtdefaultgateway&gt; &lt;tpdinterface id="management"&gt; (and all sub elements) &lt;tpdbridge id="management"&gt; (and all sub elements)</pre> <p><b>Replace</b> the following under &lt;tpdroute id="management_default"&gt;:</p> <pre>management with xmi for &lt;device&gt;management&lt;/device&gt;</pre> <p>\$\$mgmtdefaultgateway\$\$ with \$\$xmidefaultgateway\$\$ for &lt;gateway&gt;\$\$mgmtdefaultgateway\$\$&lt;/gateway&gt;</p> <p><b>Add</b> the following under &lt;tpdbridge id="xmi"&gt;:</p> <pre>&lt;address&gt;&lt;TVOE_Host_Server_XMI_IP&gt;&lt;/address&gt; &lt;netmask&gt; \$\$xmisubnet\$\$&lt;/netmask&gt;</pre>

**Procedure 2: Configure NOAM Servers**

6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC Server:</b> Validate and Run the Fast Deployment File	<p>Validate/Create the fast deployment file by executing the following command:</p> <p>For NOAMs deployed on rack mount servers:</p> <pre>\$ sudo fdconfig validate --file=DSR_NOAM_FD_RMS.xml</pre> <p>For NOAMs deployed on blade servers:</p> <pre>\$ sudo fdconfig validate --file=DSR_NOAM_FD_Blade.xml</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> Refer to <b>Appendix K: DSR Fast Deployment Configuration</b> for information of the variables that must be input during execution of NOAM fast deployment.</p> <p>If there were errors during validation, correct the errors within the xml file and re-run the validation.</p> <p>After successful validation, a new Fast deployment xml file is created:</p> <pre>--- NOTICE --- Config Data saved as a new file: "./DSR_NOAM_FD_Blade_20151217T102402.xml" --- NOTICE ---  Configuration file validation successful. Validation complete [admusr@GuestPMACeco upgrade]\$ █</pre> <p>Execute the following commands to run the fast deployment file:</p> <pre>\$ screen  \$ sudo fdconfig config --file=&lt;Created_FD_File&gt;.xml</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> This is a long duration command. If the screen command was run prior to executing the fdconfig, perform a "screen -dr" to resume the screen session in the event of a terminal timeout etc.</p>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 2: Configure NOAM Servers**

<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Monitor the Configuration</p>	<p>If not already done so, establish a GUI session on the PMAC server.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b></p>  <p>Monitor the DSR NOAM TVOE configuration to completion:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>1570</td> <td>Accept</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a></td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:01:05</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:48:55</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1569</td> <td>Accept</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a></td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:01:05</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:48:55</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1568</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a></td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td></td> <td>0:10:05</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:37:26</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1567</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a></td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td></td> <td>0:10:05</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:37:26</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1566</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a></td> <td>Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:14:00</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:21:48</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1565</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a></td> <td>Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:14:13</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:21:38</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1564</td> <td>Create Guest</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a></td> <td>Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM1)</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td></td> <td>0:00:22</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:21:08</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1563</td> <td>Create Guest</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a></td> <td>Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM2)</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td></td> <td>0:00:12</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:21:07</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	1570	Accept	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Success	COMPLETE	N/A	0:01:05	2016-09-15 15:48:55	100%	1569	Accept	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Success	COMPLETE	N/A	0:01:05	2016-09-15 15:48:55	100%	1568	Upgrade	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Success	COMPLETE		0:10:05	2016-09-15 15:37:26	100%	1567	Upgrade	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Success	COMPLETE		0:10:05	2016-09-15 15:37:26	100%	1566	Install OS	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:14:00	2016-09-15 15:21:48	100%	1565	Install OS	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:14:13	2016-09-15 15:21:38	100%	1564	Create Guest	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM1)	COMPLETE		0:00:22	2016-09-15 15:21:08	100%	1563	Create Guest	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM2)	COMPLETE		0:00:12	2016-09-15 15:21:07	100%
1570	Accept	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Success	COMPLETE	N/A	0:01:05	2016-09-15 15:48:55	100%																																																																		
1569	Accept	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Success	COMPLETE	N/A	0:01:05	2016-09-15 15:48:55	100%																																																																		
1568	Upgrade	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Success	COMPLETE		0:10:05	2016-09-15 15:37:26	100%																																																																		
1567	Upgrade	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Success	COMPLETE		0:10:05	2016-09-15 15:37:26	100%																																																																		
1566	Install OS	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:14:00	2016-09-15 15:21:48	100%																																																																		
1565	Install OS	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:14:13	2016-09-15 15:21:38	100%																																																																		
1564	Create Guest	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM1)	COMPLETE		0:00:22	2016-09-15 15:21:08	100%																																																																		
1563	Create Guest	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM2)	COMPLETE		0:00:12	2016-09-15 15:21:07	100%																																																																		
<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Backup FDC file</p>	<p>Create the fdc directory so that the NOAM fdc file is backed up by PMAC:</p> <p>Issue the following commands:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Create the fdc backup directory:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /bin/mkdir -p /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/fdc</pre> <p>Copy the fdc file to the fdc backup directory:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cp /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/&lt;fdc_file&gt; /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/fdc/</pre> </div>																																																																								

### 4.1.3 Configure NOAMs

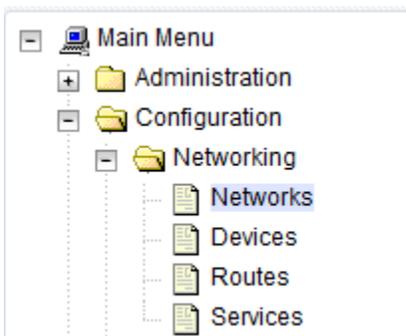
#### Procedure 3: Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the First NOAM server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Save the NOAM Network Data to an XML file</b></p>	<p>Using a text editor, create a NOAM Network Element file that describes the networking of the target install environment of your first NOAM server.</p> <p>Select an appropriate file name and save the file to a known location on your computer.</p> <p>A suggested filename format is <b>“Appname_NName_NetworkElement.XML”</b>, so for example a DSR2 NOAM network element XML file would have a filename <b>“DSR2_NOAM_NetworkElement.xml”</b>.</p> <p>Alternatively, you can update the sample DSR Network Element file. It can be found on the management server at:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><code>/usr/TKLC/smac/etc/SAMPLE-NetworkElement.xml</code></p> </div> <p>A sample XML file can also be found in <b>Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The following limitations apply when specifying a Network Element name: A 1-32-character string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and underscore. Must contain at least one alpha and must not start with a digit.</p>

**Procedure 3: Configure the First NOAM NE and Server**

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM GUI:</b> Login	<p>Using the xmi IP address configured in <b>procedure 2</b> (\$NOAM1_xmi_IP_address ) Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</i></p> <p><i>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</i></p>
-------------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 3: Configure the First NOAM NE and Server**

3	<p><b>Create the NOAM Network Element using the XML File</b></p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Networking -&gt; Networks</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Browse</b> button, and enter the pathname of the NOAM network XML file:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">To create a new Network Element, upload a valid configuration file:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Browse...</span> zombie.xml             <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; margin-left: 20px;">Upload File</span> </div> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p> <p>Select the <b>Upload File</b> button to upload the XML file and configure the NOAM Network Element.</p> <p>Once the data has been uploaded, you should see a tab appear with the name of your network element. Click on this tab and you will get a window which describes the individual networks that are now configured:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p style="font-size: small;">Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; Networking -&gt; Networks</p> <p style="font-size: x-small; margin-bottom: 5px;">Global <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 0 5px;">ZombieNOAM</span></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; font-size: x-small;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Network Name</th> <th>Network Type</th> <th>Default</th> <th>Locked</th> <th>Routed</th> <th>VLAN</th> <th>Configured Interfaces</th> <th>Network</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>XMI</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>4</td> <td>0</td> <td>10.240.213.0/24</td> </tr> <tr> <td>JMI</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>No</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> <td>3</td> <td>0</td> <td>169.254.1.0/24</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Network Name	Network Type	Default	Locked	Routed	VLAN	Configured Interfaces	Network	XMI	OAM	Yes	Yes	Yes	4	0	10.240.213.0/24	JMI	OAM	No	Yes	No	3	0	169.254.1.0/24
Network Name	Network Type	Default	Locked	Routed	VLAN	Configured Interfaces	Network																			
XMI	OAM	Yes	Yes	Yes	4	0	10.240.213.0/24																			
JMI	OAM	No	Yes	No	3	0	169.254.1.0/24																			

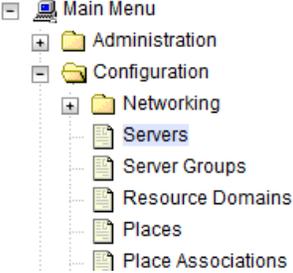
**Procedure 3: Configure the First NOAM NE and Server**

4	<b>Map Services to Networks</b>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt;Configuration-&gt; Services</b>.</p> <p>Select the <b>Edit</b> button and set the Services as shown in the table below:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Name</th> <th style="width: 35%;">Intra-NE Network</th> <th style="width: 35%;">Inter-NE Network</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OAM</td> <td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td>&lt;XMI Network&gt;</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Replication</td> <td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td>&lt;XMI Network&gt;</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Signaling</td> <td>Unspecified</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HA_Secondary</td> <td>Unspecified</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HA_MP_Secondary</td> <td>Unspecified</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Replication_MP</td> <td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ComAgent</td> <td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For example, if your IMI network is named <b>IMI</b> and your XMI network is named <b>XMI</b>, then your services should config should look like the following:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 20%;">Name</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Intra-NE Network</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Inter-NE Network</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OAM</td> <td>INTERNALIMI</td> <td>INTERNALXMI</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Replication</td> <td>INTERNALIMI</td> <td>INTERNALXMI</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Signaling</td> <td>Unspecified</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HA_Secondary</td> <td>Unspecified</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HA_MP_Secondary</td> <td>Unspecified</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Replication_MP</td> <td>INTERNALIMI</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ComAgent</td> <td>INTERNALIMI</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="font-size: small; margin-top: 5px;">OK   Apply   Cancel</p> </div> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button to apply the Service-to-Network selections.</p> <p>Press <b>Ok</b> for the following prompt to restart all servers.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0; background-color: #f9f9f9;"> <p>The page at https://localhost says: <span style="float: right;">x</span></p> <p>You must restart all Servers to apply any services changes, ComAgent</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 0 10px;">OK</span> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 0 10px;">Cancel</span> </div> </div>	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	OAM	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>	Replication	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>	Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	Unspecified	ComAgent	<IMI Network>	Unspecified	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	OAM	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI	Replication	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI	Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	Replication_MP	INTERNALIMI	Unspecified	ComAgent	INTERNALIMI	Unspecified
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network																																																
OAM	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>																																																
Replication	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>																																																
Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	Unspecified																																																
ComAgent	<IMI Network>	Unspecified																																																
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network																																																
OAM	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI																																																
Replication	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI																																																
Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
Replication_MP	INTERNALIMI	Unspecified																																																
ComAgent	INTERNALIMI	Unspecified																																																

**Procedure 3: Configure the First NOAM NE and Server**

5	<p><b>Insert the 1st NOAM server</b></p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the new NOAM server into servers table (the first or server).</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20%;">Role *</td> <td>NETWORK OAM&amp;P <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>System ID</td> <td><input style="width: 90%;" type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Hardware Profile</td> <td>DSR TVOE Guest <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Element Name *</td> <td>ZombieNOAM <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Location</td> <td>pc5010441</td> </tr> </table> </div> <p>Fill in the fields as follows:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</p> <p><b>Role:</b> NETWORK OAM&amp;P</p> <p><b>System ID:</b> &lt;Site System ID&gt;</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> DSR TVOE Guest</p> <p><b>Network Element Name:</b> [Choose NE from Drop Down Box]</p> <p>The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20%; font-size: small;">XMI (10.240.213.0/24)</td> <td style="width: 40%;"><input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="10.240.213.2"/></td> <td style="width: 10%;"><input type="button" value="v"/></td> <td style="width: 10%; font-size: small;">xmi</td> <td style="width: 10%;"><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td style="width: 10%; font-size: small;">VLAN (4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="font-size: small;">IMI (169.254.1.0/24)</td> <td><input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="169.254.1.2"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="v"/></td> <td>imi</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>VLAN (3)</td> </tr> </table> </div> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select <b>xmi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The xmi server IP must match '\$NOAM1_xmi_IP_address' configured in Procedure 2</p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select <b>imi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The imi server IP must match '\$NOAM1_imi_IP_address' configured in Procedure 2</p> <p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 70%;">NTP Server</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO1)&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button when you have completed entering all the server data.</p>	Role *	NETWORK OAM&P <input type="button" value="v"/>	System ID	<input style="width: 90%;" type="text"/>	Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest <input type="button" value="v"/>	Network Element Name *	ZombieNOAM <input type="button" value="v"/>	Location	pc5010441	XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="10.240.213.2"/>	<input type="button" value="v"/>	xmi	<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN (4)	IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="169.254.1.2"/>	<input type="button" value="v"/>	imi	<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN (3)	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO1)>	Yes
Role *	NETWORK OAM&P <input type="button" value="v"/>																											
System ID	<input style="width: 90%;" type="text"/>																											
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest <input type="button" value="v"/>																											
Network Element Name *	ZombieNOAM <input type="button" value="v"/>																											
Location	pc5010441																											
XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="10.240.213.2"/>	<input type="button" value="v"/>	xmi	<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN (4)																							
IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="169.254.1.2"/>	<input type="button" value="v"/>	imi	<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN (3)																							
NTP Server	Preferred?																											
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO1)>	Yes																											

**Procedure 3: Configure the First NOAM NE and Server**

6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Export the Initial Configuration</b>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers</b>.</p>  <p>From the GUI screen, select the NOAM server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> 
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM: Copy Configuration File to 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM Server</b>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM server, logging in as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM to the <code>/var/tmp</code> directory.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like <code>TKLCConfigData.&lt;hostname&gt;.sh</code>. The following is an example:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cp /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/TKLCConfigData.blade01.sh /var/tmp/TKLCConfigData.sh</pre>
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM: Wait for Configuration to Complete</b>	<p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named <b>“TKLCConfigData.sh”</b> in the <code>/var/tmp</code> directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Wait to be prompted to reboot the server, but <b>DO NOT</b> reboot the server, it will be rebooted later on in this procedure.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Ignore the warning about removing the USB key, since no USB key is present. .</p>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM: Set the Time zone and Reboot the Server</b>	<p>From the command line prompt, execute <b>set_ini_tz.pl</b>. This will set the system time zone The following command example uses the America/New_York time zone.</p> <p>Replace as appropriate with the time zone you have selected for this installation. For a full list of valid time zones, see <b>Appendix G: List of Frequently used Time Zones</b>.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/bin/set_ini_tz.pl "America/New_York"</pre> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

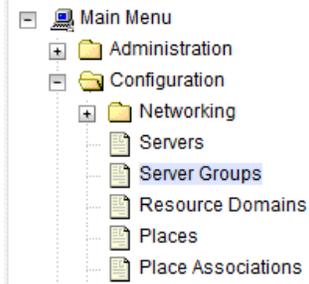
**Procedure 3: Configure the First NOAM NE and Server**

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>1<sup>st</sup> NOAM:</b> Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if your NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <p>Obtain a terminal window to the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM server, logging in as the <i>admusr</i> user.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=NetBackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_IP_Address&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt;</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=&lt;NetBackup_Svr_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt; --gateway=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre>
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>1<sup>st</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Verify Server Health	<p>Execute the following command on the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>

**Procedure 4: Configure the NOAM Server Group**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the NOAM server group.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;NO1_XMI_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr/> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>

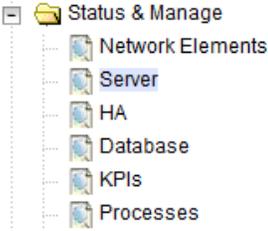
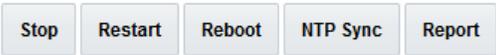
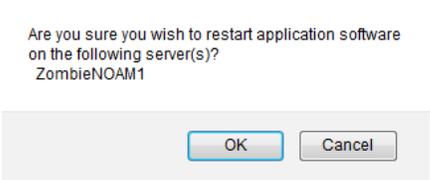
**Procedure 4: Configure the NOAM Server Group**

2	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Enter NOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Insert</b> and fill the following fields:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; display: inline-block; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Server Group Name:</b> &lt;Enter Server Group Name&gt;</li> <li><b>Level:</b> <b>A</b></li> <li><b>Parent :</b> <b>None</b></li> <li><b>Function:</b> <b>DSR (Active/Standby Pair)</b></li> <li><b>WAN Replication Connection Count:</b> <b>Use Default Value</b></li> </ul> <p>Adding new server group</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Field</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Value</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Desc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Server Group Name *</td> <td><input type="text" value="ZombieNOAM"/></td> <td>Uniqu requir</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Level *</td> <td><input type="text" value="A"/> ▼</td> <td>Selec</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Parent *</td> <td><input type="text" value="NONE"/> ▼</td> <td>Selec</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Function *</td> <td><input type="text" value="DSR (active/standby pair)"/> ▼</td> <td>Selec</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN Replication Connection Count</td> <td><input type="text" value="1"/></td> <td>Speci</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in.</p>	Field	Value	Desc	Server Group Name *	<input type="text" value="ZombieNOAM"/>	Uniqu requir	Level *	<input type="text" value="A"/> ▼	Selec	Parent *	<input type="text" value="NONE"/> ▼	Selec	Function *	<input type="text" value="DSR (active/standby pair)"/> ▼	Selec	WAN Replication Connection Count	<input type="text" value="1"/>	Speci
Field	Value	Desc																		
Server Group Name *	<input type="text" value="ZombieNOAM"/>	Uniqu requir																		
Level *	<input type="text" value="A"/> ▼	Selec																		
Parent *	<input type="text" value="NONE"/> ▼	Selec																		
Function *	<input type="text" value="DSR (active/standby pair)"/> ▼	Selec																		
WAN Replication Connection Count	<input type="text" value="1"/>	Speci																		

**Procedure 4: Configure the NOAM Server Group**

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Edit the NOAM Server Group</p>	<p>From the GUI <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups.</b></p> <p>Select the new server group, and then select <b>Edit</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <span>Insert</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Delete</span> <span>Report</span> </div> <p>Select the Network Element that represents the NOAM.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 40%;">Server</th> <th style="width: 30%;">SG Inclusion</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Preferred HA Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieNOAM1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>In the portion of the screen that lists the servers for the server group, find the NOAM server being configured.</p> <p>Click the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Leave other boxes blank.</p> <p>Press <b>OK</b></p>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	ZombieNOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role						
ZombieNOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare						
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM:</b> Verify NOAM blade server role</p>	<p>From terminal window to the iLO of the first NOAM server, execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> <code>\$ha.mystate</code> </div> <p>Verify that the <b>DbReplication</b> and <b>VIP</b> item under the <b>resourceId</b> column has a value of <b>Active</b> under the <b>role</b> column.</p> <p>You might have to wait a few minutes for it to become in that state.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre style="background-color: #2e3436; color: #eeeeec; padding: 10px; font-family: monospace;">[admusr@Jetta-NO-1 ~]\$ ha.mystate resourceId  role      node      subResources  lastUpdate DbReplication Active    A1027.209    0 0316:161158.499 VIP Active    A1027.209    0 0316:161158.501 pSbrBBaseRepl OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.074 pSbrBindingRes OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.074 pSbrSBaseRepl OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.075 pSbrSessionRes OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.075 PSBR_B_Proc OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.074 PSBR_S_Proc OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.075 CacdProcessRes Active    A1027.209    0 0316:161158.501 DA_MP_Leader OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.071 DSR_SLDB OOS      A1027.209    0-63 0316:155546.071 VIP_DA_MP OOS      A1027.209    0-63 0316:155546.072 EXGSTACK_Process OOS      A1027.209    0-63 0316:155546.072 DSR_Process OOS      A1027.209    0-63 0316:155546.072 CAPM_HELP_Proc OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.070 DSROAM_Proc Active    A1027.209    0 0316:161158.497 CAPM_PSFS_Proc OOS      A1027.209    0 0316:155546.070 SS7_MP_Process_HA_Proc OOS      A1027.209    0-63 0316:155546.073 SS7_MP_Process OOS      A1027.209    0-63 0316:155546.074</pre>						

**Procedure 4: Configure the NOAM Server Group**

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM GUI:</b> Restart NOAM Server	<p>From the NOAM GUI, select the <b>Main menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Server</b> menu.</p>  <p>Select the NOAM server. Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</p>  <p>Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup.</p>  <p>Wait for restart to complete.</p>
-------------------------------	-----------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 5: Configure the Second NOAM Server**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the Second NOAM server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>https://&lt;NO1_XMI_IP_Address&gt;</p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">  </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Oracle System Login</b> <span style="float: right;">Mon Jul 11 13:59:37 2016 EDT</span></p> <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <p><b>Log In</b></p> <p>Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p>Password: <input style="width: 100px;" type="password"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p><input type="button" value="Log In"/></p> </div> </div> <p style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 10px auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>

**Procedure 5: Configure the Second NOAM Server**

2	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Insert the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server into servers table (the first or server).</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>Hostname * <input type="text" value="ZombieNOAM2"/></p> <hr/> <p>Role * <input type="text" value="NETWORK OAM&amp;P"/></p> <hr/> <p>System ID <input type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p>Hardware Profile <input type="text" value="DSR TVOE Guest"/></p> <hr/> <p>Network Element Name * <input type="text" value="ZombieNOAM"/></p> <hr/> <p>Location <input type="text" value="pc5010439"/></p> </div> <p>Fill in the fields as follows:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</p> <p><b>Role:</b> NETWORK OAM&amp;P</p> <p><b>System ID:</b> &lt;Site System ID&gt;</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> DSR TVOE Guest</p> <p><b>Network Element Name:</b> [Choose NE from Drop Down Box]</p> <p>The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>XMI (10.240.213.0/24) <input type="text" value="10.240.213.3"/> <input type="text" value="xmi"/> <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</p> <hr/> <p>IMI (169.254.1.0/24) <input type="text" value="169.254.1.3"/> <input type="text" value="imi"/> <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</p> </div> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select <b>xmi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The xmi server IP must match '\$NOAM2_xmi_IP_address' configured in Procedure 2</p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select <b>imi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The imi server IP must match '\$NOAM2_imi_IP_address' configured in Procedure 2</p> <p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 70%;">NTP Server</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO2)&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button when you have completed entering all the server data.</p>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO2)>	Yes
NTP Server	Preferred?					
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO2)>	Yes					

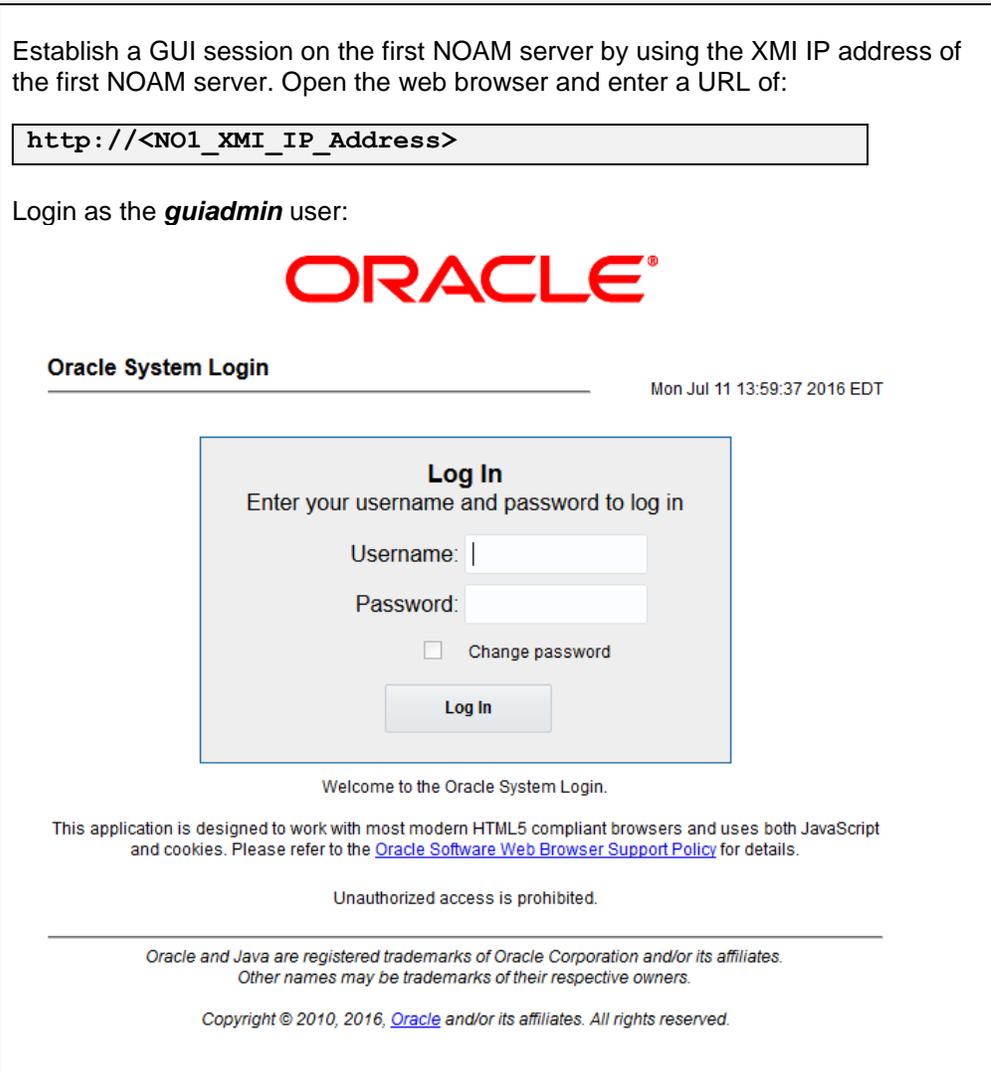
**Procedure 5: Configure the Second NOAM Server**

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM GUI:</b> Export the Initial Configuration	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>From the GUI screen, select the NOAM server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Insert</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Edit</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Delete</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Export</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Report</span> </div>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>1<sup>st</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Copy Configuration File to 2 <sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Execute the following command to configure the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>\$ sudo scp -r /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/TKLCConfigData.&lt;NOAM2_Hostname&gt;.sh admusr@&lt;NOAM2_xmi_IP_address&gt;:/var/tmp/TKLCConfigData.sh</pre> </div>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Verify configuration was called and Reboot the Server	<p>Establish an SSH session to the 2nd NOAM server (NOAM2_xmi_IP_address)</p> <p>Login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named <b>"TKLCConfigData.sh"</b> in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify configuration was called by checking the following file</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> </div> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> </div> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> </div> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>

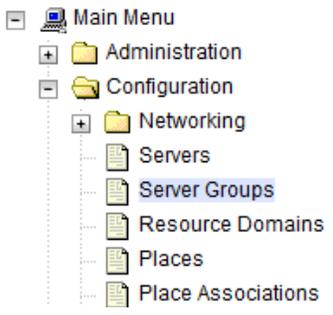
**Procedure 5: Configure the Second NOAM Server**

<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if your NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <p>Obtain a terminal window to the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server, logging in as the <i>admusr</i> user.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=netbackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=&lt;NO2_NetBackup_IP_Address&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO2_NetBackup_NetMask&gt;</pre> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=&lt;NetBackup_Svr_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO2_NetBackup_NetMask&gt; --gateway=&lt;NO2_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre>
<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Verify Server Health</p>	<p>Execute the following command on the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>

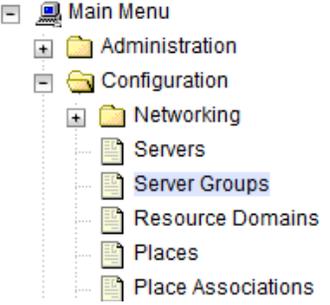
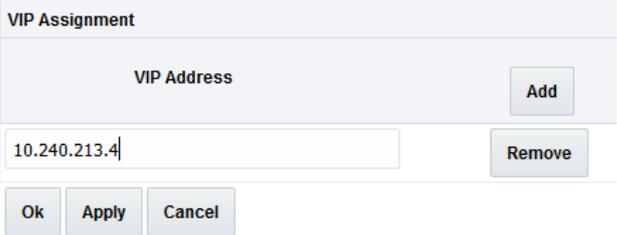
**Procedure 6: Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to finish configuring the NOAM server group.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>http://&lt;NO1_XMI_IP_Address&gt;</p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr/> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>

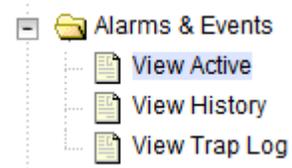
**Procedure 6: Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration**

2	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Edit the NOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups.</b></p>  <p>Select the NOAM Server group and click on <b>Edit</b></p>  <p>Add the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server to the Server Group by clicking the <b><i>Include in SG</i></b> checkbox for the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Server</th> <th style="text-align: left;">SG Inclusion</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Preferred HA Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieNOAM1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieNOAM2</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Click <b>Apply.</b></p>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	ZombieNOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare	ZombieNOAM2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role									
ZombieNOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare									
ZombieNOAM2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare									

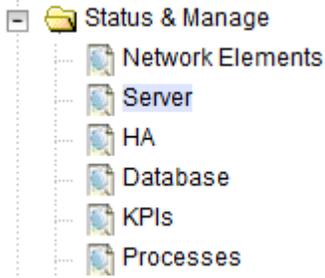
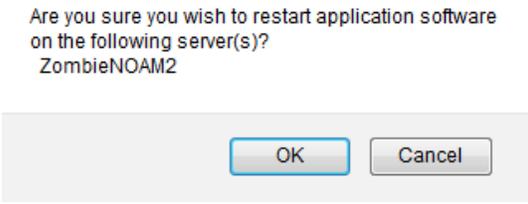
**Procedure 6: Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration**

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP:</b> Add VIP	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups.</b></p>  <p>Select the NOAM Server group and click on <b>Edit</b></p>  <p>Add a NOAM VIP by click on <b>Add</b>. Fill in the VIP Address and press <b>Ok</b> as shown below</p> 
-------------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 6: Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration**

<p>4 ☐</p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP:</b> Establish GUI Session</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM by using the XMI VIP address:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as user <i>guiadmin</i>.</p> 
<p>5 ☐</p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP:</b> Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear</p>	<p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Alarms &amp; Events-&gt;View Active</b></p>  <p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p>

**Procedure 6: Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration**

6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM GUI:</b> Restart 2 <sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server	<p>From the NOAM GUI, select the <b>Main menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Server</b> menu.</p>  <p>Select the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server. Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</p>  <p>Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup.</p>  <p>Wait for restart to complete. Wait approximately 3-5 minutes before proceeding.</p>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### 4.1.4 Install NetBackup Client (Optional)

##### Procedure 7: Install NetBackup Client

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will download and install NetBackup Client software on the server.</p> <p>Location of the bpstart_notify and bpend_notify scripts is required for the execution of this procedure. For Appworks based applications the scripts are located as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/bpstart_notify</li> <li>- /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/bpend_notify</li> </ul> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install NetBackup Client Software</b>	<p>If a customer has a way of transferring and installing the net Backup client without the aid of TPD tools (push configuration) then use <b>Appendix H 2:</b></p> <p>Note: This is not common. If the answer to the previous question is not known then use <b>Appendix H</b></p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install NetBackup Client Software</b>	<p>Choose the same method used in step 1 to install NetBackup on the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM.</p>

## 4.2 Install and Configure DR-NOAM Servers (Optional)

### 4.2.1 Execute DSR Fast Deployment for DR-NOAMs

#### Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will extend the TVOE networking configuration on the First DR-NOAM RMS server (if necessary), configure the networking on additional rack mount servers, create the DR-NOAM VMs, and deploy the DSR and TPD images.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE and PMAC (virtualized) have been installed on the First DR-NOAM RMS Server as described in [7]</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC Server:</b> Login	Establish an SSH session to the PMAC server, login as <b>admusr</b> .

**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Update the DSR Fast Deployment template</p>	<p>Perform the following command to navigate to the directory containing the DSR fast deployment template:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ cd /usr/TKLC/smac/etc</pre> <p>DSR Fast Deployment Template Names:</p> <p><b>NOAM on Rack Mount Servers:</b> DSR_NOAM_FD_RMS.xml <b>NOAM on Blade Servers:</b> DSR_NOAM_FD_Blade.xml</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the fast deployment template is not present, then please re-execute section “Setup PM&amp;C” step 10, sub step C from [7].</p> <p>Update the following items within the Fast deployment xml:</p> <p><b>TPD and DSR ISO:</b></p> <pre>&lt;software&gt;   &lt;!--Target TPD release Image here --&gt;   &lt;image id="tpd"&gt;     &lt;name&gt;TPD.install-7.0.2.0.0_86.34.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64&lt;/name&gt;   &lt;/image&gt;   &lt;!--Target DSR release Image here --&gt;   &lt;image id="dsr"&gt;     &lt;name&gt;DSR-8.0.0.0_72.8.0-x86_64&lt;/name&gt;   &lt;/image&gt; &lt;/software&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> These are the images uploaded from Section 4.1.1 Load Application and TPD ISO onto the PMAC Server. Do <b>NOT</b> append ‘.iso’ to the image name. To copy and paste the image name from the command line, issue the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ ls /var/TKLC/smac/image/repository</pre> <p><b>Bond 1 Creation:</b> <b>Skip this step if Bond1 will not be created</b></p> <p>Uncomment the following items from <b>BOTH</b> tvee host id="NOAM1" and tvee host id="NOAM2" by removing the encapsulated ‘&lt;!--’ ‘--&gt;’ brackets as highlighted below:</p> <p>Update the Ethernet interfaces that are to be enslaved by bond1.</p> <pre>&lt;!-- &lt;tpdinterface id="bond1"&gt; &lt;device&gt;bond1&lt;/device&gt; &lt;type&gt;Bonding&lt;/type&gt; &lt;bonddata&gt; &lt;bondinterfaces&gt;&lt;bond1_eth_interface1&gt;,&lt;bond1_eth_interface2&gt;&lt;/bondinterfaces&gt; &lt;bondopts&gt;mode=active-backup,miimon=100&lt;/bondopts&gt; &lt;/bonddata&gt; &lt;onboot&gt;yes&lt;/onboot&gt; &lt;bootproto&gt;none&lt;/bootproto&gt; &lt;/tpdinterface&gt; --&gt;</pre>
------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

<p>3 □</p>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Update the DSR Fast Deployment template management/xmi combination (Part 3)</p>	<p><b>Only execute this step if your management network and xmi networks are combined, otherwise skip this step.</b></p> <p>Modify the template to reflect the following on <b>BOTH</b> tvoe host id="NOAM1" and tvoe host id="NOAM2":</p> <p><b>Remove</b> the following stanzas:</p> <pre>&lt;mgmtbondinterface&gt; &lt;mgmtvlan&gt; &lt;mgmtsubnet&gt; &lt;mgmtdefaultgateway&gt; &lt;tpdinterface id="management"&gt; (and all sub elements) &lt;tpdbridge id="management"&gt; (and all sub elements)</pre> <p><b>Replace</b> the following under &lt;tpdroute id="management_default"&gt;:</p> <p>management with xmi for &lt;device&gt;management&lt;/device&gt;</p> <p>\$\$mgmtdefaultgateway\$\$ with \$\$xmidefaultgateway\$\$ for &lt;gateway&gt;\$\$mgmtdefaultgateway\$\$&lt;/gateway&gt;</p> <p><b>Add</b> the following under &lt;tpdbridge id="xmi"&gt;:</p> <pre>&lt;address&gt;&lt;TVOE_Host_Server_XMI_IP&gt;&lt;/address&gt; &lt;netmask&gt; \$\$xmisubnet\$\$&lt;/netmask&gt;</pre>
----------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

<p>4</p> <p>□</p>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Validate and Run the Fast Deployment File</p>	<p>Validate/Create the fast deployment file by executing the following command:</p> <p>For NOAMs deployed on rack mount servers:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ sudo fdconfig validate --file=DSR_NOAM_FD_RMS.xml</pre> <p>For NOAMs deployed on blade servers:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ sudo fdconfig validate --file=DSR_NOAM_FD_Blade.xml</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> Refer to <b>Appendix K: DSR Fast Deployment Configuration</b> for information of the variables that must be input during execution of the NOAM fast deployment.</p> <p>If there were errors during validation, correct the errors within the xml file and re-run the validation.</p> <p>After successful validation, a new Fast deployment xml file is created:</p> <pre style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;">--- NOTICE --- Config Data saved as a new file: "./DSR_NOAM_FD_Blade_20151217T102402.xml" --- NOTICE ---  Configuration file validation successful. Validation complete [admusr@GuestPMACeco upgrade]\$ █</pre> <p>Execute the following commands to run the fast deployment file:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ screen  \$ sudo fdconfig config --file=&lt;Created_FD_File&gt;.xml</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> This is a long duration command. If the screen command was run prior to executing the fdconfig, perform a “screen -dr” to resume the screen session in the event of a terminal timeout etc.</p>
-------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

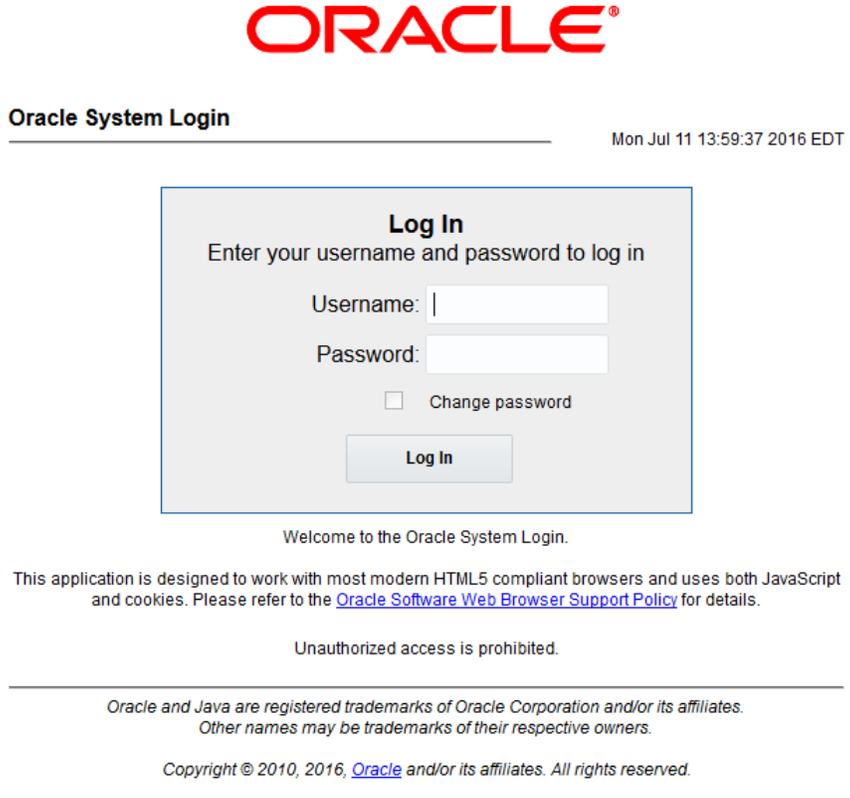
**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Monitor the Configuration</p>	<p>If not already done so, establish a GUI session on the PMAC server.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b></p>  <p>Monitor the DSR NOAM TVOE configuration to completion:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>1570</td> <td>Accept</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a></td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:01:05</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:48:55</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1569</td> <td>Accept</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a></td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:01:05</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:48:55</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1568</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a></td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td></td> <td>0:10:05</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:37:26</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1567</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a></td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td></td> <td>0:10:05</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:37:26</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1566</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a></td> <td>Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:14:00</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:21:48</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1565</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a></td> <td>Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:14:13</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:21:38</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1564</td> <td>Create Guest</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a></td> <td>Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM1)</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td></td> <td>0:00:22</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:21:08</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1563</td> <td>Create Guest</td> <td>RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a></td> <td>Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM2)</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td></td> <td>0:00:12</td> <td>2016-09-15 15:21:07</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	1570	Accept	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Success	COMPLETE	N/A	0:01:05	2016-09-15 15:48:55	100%	1569	Accept	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Success	COMPLETE	N/A	0:01:05	2016-09-15 15:48:55	100%	1568	Upgrade	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Success	COMPLETE		0:10:05	2016-09-15 15:37:26	100%	1567	Upgrade	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Success	COMPLETE		0:10:05	2016-09-15 15:37:26	100%	1566	Install OS	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:14:00	2016-09-15 15:21:48	100%	1565	Install OS	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:14:13	2016-09-15 15:21:38	100%	1564	Create Guest	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM1)	COMPLETE		0:00:22	2016-09-15 15:21:08	100%	1563	Create Guest	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM2)	COMPLETE		0:00:12	2016-09-15 15:21:07	100%
1570	Accept	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Success	COMPLETE	N/A	0:01:05	2016-09-15 15:48:55	100%																																																																		
1569	Accept	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Success	COMPLETE	N/A	0:01:05	2016-09-15 15:48:55	100%																																																																		
1568	Upgrade	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Success	COMPLETE		0:10:05	2016-09-15 15:37:26	100%																																																																		
1567	Upgrade	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Success	COMPLETE		0:10:05	2016-09-15 15:37:26	100%																																																																		
1566	Install OS	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:14:00	2016-09-15 15:21:48	100%																																																																		
1565	Install OS	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Done: TPD.install-7.3.0.0.0_88.27.0-OracleLinux6.8-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:14:13	2016-09-15 15:21:38	100%																																																																		
1564	Create Guest	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010441</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM1</a>	Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM1)	COMPLETE		0:00:22	2016-09-15 15:21:08	100%																																																																		
1563	Create Guest	RMS: <a href="#">pc5010439</a> Guest: <a href="#">Brains_DSRNOAM2</a>	Guest creation completed (Brains_DSRNOAM2)	COMPLETE		0:00:12	2016-09-15 15:21:07	100%																																																																		
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Backup FDC file</p>	<p>Create the fdc directory so that the NOAM fdc file is backed up by PMAC:</p> <p>Issue the following commands:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Create the fdc backup directory:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /bin/mkdir -p /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/fdc</pre> <p>Copy the fdc file to the fdc backup directory:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cp /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/&lt;fdc_file&gt; /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/fdc/</pre> </div>																																																																								

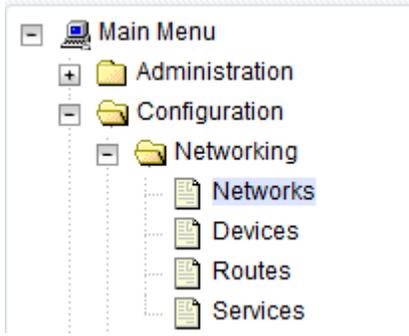
**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

7 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Save the DR-NOAM Network Data to an XML file</b>	<p>Using a text editor, create a DR-NOAM Network Element file that describes the networking of the target install environment of your first DR-NOAM server.</p> <p>Select an appropriate file name and save the file to a known location on your computer.</p> <p>A suggested filename format is <b>“Appname_NName_NetworkElement.XML”</b>, so for example a DSR2 NOAM network element XML file would have a filename <b>“DSR2_NOAM_NetworkElement.xml”</b>.</p> <p>Alternatively, you can update the sample DSR Network Element file. It can be found on the management server at:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code>/usr/TKLC/smac/etc/SAMPLE-NetworkElement.xml</code></div> <p>A sample XML file can also be found in <b>Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The following limitations apply when specifying a Network Element name: A 1-32-character string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and underscore. Must contain at least one alpha and must not start with a digit.</p>
-------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

8 □	<b>PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI VIP IP address. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code>http://&lt;NOAM_XMI_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"></div>
--------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

9	<p><b>PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the DR NOAM Network Element</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Network Elements</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Browse</b> button, and enter the pathname of the DR-NOAM network XML file:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">To create a new Network Element, upload a valid configuration file:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> zombieDR.xml      <input type="button" value="Upload File"/> </div> <p style="font-size: small;">Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p> <p>Select the <b>Upload File</b> button to upload the XML file and configure the DR-NOAM Network Element.</p> <p>Once the data has been uploaded, you should see a tab appear with the name of your network element. Click on this tab and you will get a window which describes the individual networks that are now configured:</p> <p>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; Networking -&gt; Networks</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Info*</p> <p>Global    ZombieNOAM ⓘ    <b>ZombieDRNOAM</b> ⓘ</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; font-size: x-small;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Network Name</th> <th>Network Type</th> <th>Default</th> <th>Locked</th> <th>Routed</th> <th>VLAN</th> <th>Configured Interfaces</th> <th>Network</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>XMI</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>4</td> <td>0</td> <td>10.240.213.0/24</td> </tr> <tr> <td>JMI</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>No</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> <td>3</td> <td>0</td> <td>169.254.1.0/24</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Network Name	Network Type	Default	Locked	Routed	VLAN	Configured Interfaces	Network	XMI	OAM	Yes	Yes	Yes	4	0	10.240.213.0/24	JMI	OAM	No	Yes	No	3	0	169.254.1.0/24
Network Name	Network Type	Default	Locked	Routed	VLAN	Configured Interfaces	Network																			
XMI	OAM	Yes	Yes	Yes	4	0	10.240.213.0/24																			
JMI	OAM	No	Yes	No	3	0	169.254.1.0/24																			

**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

10	<p><b>PRIMARY NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Insert the 1st DR-NOAM server</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the new DR-NOAM server into servers table.</p> <p><b>Adding a new server</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Attribute</th> <th>Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hostname *</td> <td>ZombieDRNOAM1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Role *</td> <td>NETWORK OAM&amp;P</td> </tr> <tr> <td>System ID</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Hardware Profile</td> <td>DSR TVOE Guest</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Element Name *</td> <td>ZombieDRNOAM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Location</td> <td>pc5010441</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Fill in the fields as follows:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</p> <p><b>Role:</b> <b>NETWORK OAM&amp;P</b></p> <p><b>System ID:</b> &lt;Site System ID&gt;</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> <b>DSR TVOE Guest</b></p> <p><b>Network Element Name:</b> [Choose NE from Drop Down Box]</p> <p>The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>XMI (10.240.213.0/24)</td> <td>10.240.213.5</td> <td>xmi</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IMI (169.254.1.0/24)</td> <td>169.254.1.5</td> <td>imi</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select <b>xmi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The xmi server IP must match '\$DR-NOAM_xmi_IP_address' configured in step 2</p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select <b>imi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The imi server IP must match '\$DR-NOAM_xmi_IP_address' configured in Step 2</p> <p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th> <th>Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO1)&gt;</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button when you have completed entering all the server data.</p>	Attribute	Value	Hostname *	ZombieDRNOAM1	Role *	NETWORK OAM&P	System ID		Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest	Network Element Name *	ZombieDRNOAM	Location	pc5010441	XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	10.240.213.5	xmi	<input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)	IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	169.254.1.5	imi	<input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO1)>	Yes
Attribute	Value																											
Hostname *	ZombieDRNOAM1																											
Role *	NETWORK OAM&P																											
System ID																												
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest																											
Network Element Name *	ZombieDRNOAM																											
Location	pc5010441																											
XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	10.240.213.5	xmi	<input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)																									
IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	169.254.1.5	imi	<input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)																									
NTP Server	Preferred?																											
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO1)>	Yes																											

**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

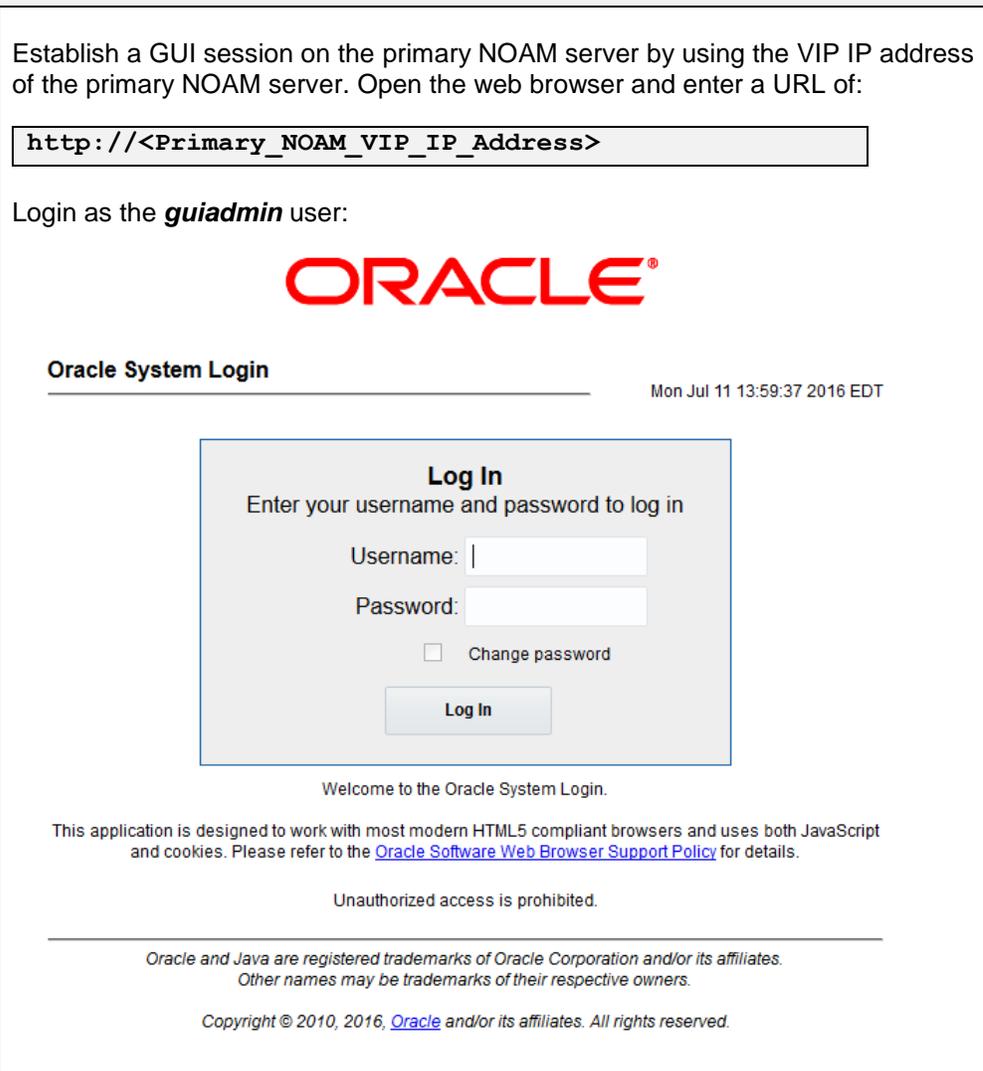
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Export the Initial Configuration	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>From the GUI screen, select the DR-NOAM server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <span>Insert</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Delete</span> <span>Export</span> <span>Report</span> </div>
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>1<sup>st</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Copy Configuration File to DR-NOAM NOAM Server	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the primary NOAM as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Execute the following command to configure the DR-NOAM server:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>\$ sudo scp -r /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/TKLCConfigData.&lt;DR-NOAM_Hostname&gt;.sh admusr@&lt;DR-NOAM_xmi_IP_address&gt;:/var/tmp/TKLCConfigData.sh</pre> </div>
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM Server:</b> Verify configuration was called and Reboot the Server	<p>Establish an SSH session to the DR-NOAM server (DR-NOAM_xmi_IP_address)</p> <p>Login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named <b>"TKLCConfigData.sh"</b> in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify configuration was called by checking the following file</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> </div> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> </div> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> </div> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>

**Procedure 8: NOAM Configuration for DR Site**

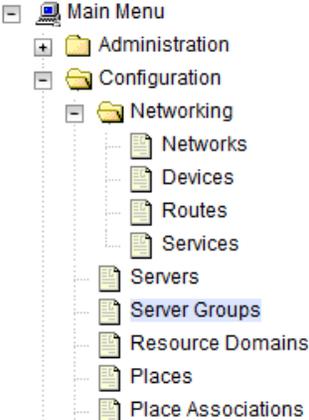
<p>14 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM:</b> Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if your DR-NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <p>Obtain a terminal window to the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM server, logging in as the <i>admusr</i> user.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=netbackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_IP_Address&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt;</pre> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=&lt;NetBackup_Svr_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt; --gateway=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre>				
<p>15 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM Server:</b> Verify Server Health</p>	<p>Execute the following command on the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>				
<p>16 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Repeat for 2<sup>nd</sup> DR NOAM Server</b></p>	<p>Repeat <b>Steps 7 through 12</b> to configure 2<sup>nd</sup> DR-NOAM Server. When inserting the 2<sup>nd</sup> DR-NOAM server, change the NTP server address to the following:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th> <th>Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)&gt;</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)>	Yes
NTP Server	Preferred?					
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)>	Yes					

## 4.2.2 Pairing DR-NOAMs

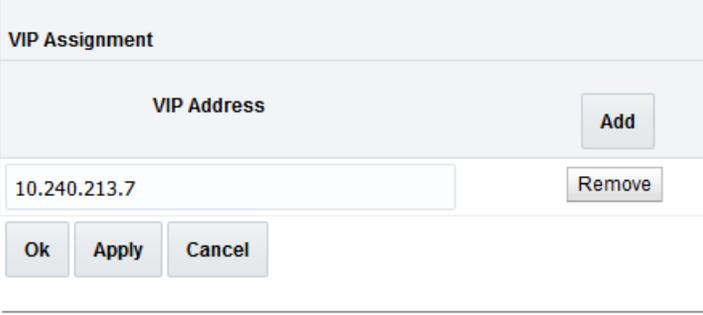
### Procedure 9: Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to pair the DR-NOAM site.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> Installation for DR-NOAM Site complete</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Primary NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the primary NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the primary NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 

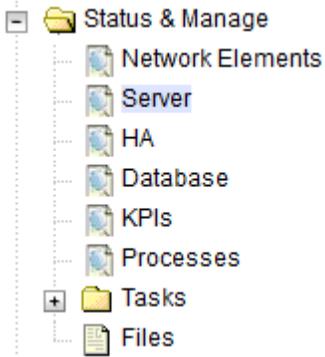
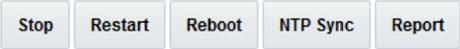
**Procedure 9: Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Primary NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Enter DR-NOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Insert</b> and fill the following fields:</p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Server Group Name:</b> &lt;Enter Server Group Name&gt;</li> <li>• <b>Level:</b> <b>A</b></li> <li>• <b>Parent :</b> <b>None</b></li> <li>• <b>Function:</b> <b>DSR (Active/Standby Pair)</b></li> <li>• <b>WAN Replication Connection Count:</b> <b>Use Default Value</b></li> </ul> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in.</p>									
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Primary NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Update Server Group</p>	<p>Select the <b>Server Group</b> that was created in the previous step, and click on <b>Edit</b>.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>The user will be presented with the <b>Server Groups [Edit]</b> screen</p> <p>Check the checkbox labeled <b>Include in SG</b> for <b>both</b> DR-NOAM Servers as shown below and click on <b>Apply</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server</th> <th>SG Inclusion</th> <th>Preferred HA Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieDRNOAM1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieDRNOAM2</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	ZombieDRNOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare	ZombieDRNOAM2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role									
ZombieDRNOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare									
ZombieDRNOAM2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare									

**Procedure 9: Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)**

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Primary NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Add DR-NOAM VIP</p>	<p>Click the <b>Add</b> dialogue button for the VIP Address and enter an IP Address for the VIP as shown below</p>  <p>Then click the <b>Apply</b> dialogue button. Verify that the banner information message states <b>Data committed</b>.</p>
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Primary NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear</p>	<p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Alarms &amp; Events-&gt;View Active</b></p>  <p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p>

**Procedure 9: Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)**

6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Primary NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Restart 1 <sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM Server	<p>From the NOAM GUI, select the <b>Main menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Server</b> menu.</p>  <p>Select the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM server. Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</p>  <p>Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup.</p>  <p>Wait for restart to complete. Wait approximately 3-5 minutes before proceeding.</p>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Primary NOAM VIP GUI :</b> Restart the application on the 2 <sup>nd</sup> DR-NOAM Server	Repeat Step 6, but this time selecting 2 <sup>nd</sup> DR-NOAM Server.
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Primary NOAM:</b> Modify DSR OAM process	<p>Establish an SSH session to the primary NOAM, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>Retrieve the cluster ID of the DR-NOAM: \$ sudo iqt -fClusterID TopologyMapping where "NodeID='&lt;DR_NOAM_Host_Name&gt;' "   Server_ID      NodeID ClusterID       1 Oahu-DSR-DR-NOAM-2  A1055</pre> <p>Execute the following command to start the DSR OAM process on the DR-NOAM:</p> <pre>\$ echo "&lt;clusterID&gt; DSROAM_Proc Yes"   iload -ha -xun - fcluster -fresource -foptional HaClusterResourceCfg</pre>

### 4.2.3 Install NetBackup Client (Optional)

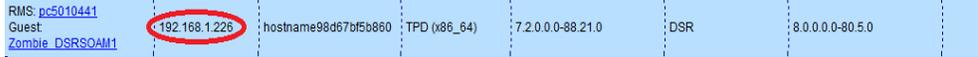
#### Procedure 10: Install NetBackup Client

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will download and install NetBackup Client software on the server.</p> <p>Location of the bpstart_notify and bpend_notify scripts is required for the execution of this procedure. For Appworks based applications the scripts are located as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/bpstart_notify</li> <li>- /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/bpend_notify</li> </ul> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install NetBackup Client Software</b>	<p>If a customer has a way of transferring and installing the net Backup client without the aid of TPD tools (push configuration) then use <b>Appendix H 2:</b></p> <p>Note: This is not common. If the answer to the previous question is not known then use <b>Appendix H.1: NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL USING PLATCFG</b></p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install NetBackup Client Software</b>	<p>Choose the same method used in step 1 to install NetBackup on the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM.</p>

### 4.3 Install and Configure SOAM Servers

#### 4.3.1 Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades

**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will configure TVOE on the server blades that will host DSR SOAM VMs. It details the configuration for a single server blade and should be repeated for every TVOE blade that was IPM-ed for this install.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> TVOE should only be installed on Blade servers that will run as DSR SOAMs. They should NOT be installed on Blade servers intended to run as DSR MPs.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE OS has been installed on the target server blades as per instructions in [7]</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Exchange SSH keys between PMAC and TVOE server</p> <p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of TVOE server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p>  <p>Note the IP address TVOE server.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC, login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Exchange SSH keys between the PMAC and the TVOE server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the TVOE blade server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the TVOE server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;TVOE_Control_Blade_IP_address&gt;</pre>
<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>TVOE Server:</b> Login and Copy Configuration Scripts from PMAC</p> <p>Login as <b>admusr</b> on the TVOE server using control IP address above.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;Mgmt_Server_Control_IP_address&gt;:/usr/TKLC/smac/etc/TVOE* /usr/TKLC/</pre> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 777 /usr/TKLC/TVOE*</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> If no TVOE configuration scripts are found here, then please re-execute section 4.2.2, Step #13 of [7]</p>

**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

<p>3</p> <p>□</p> <p><b>TVOE Server:</b> Mezzanine card/ segregated OAM/XMI network configuration</p>	<p>If your TVOE server blade DOES have mezzanine cards AND you will be running OAM/XMI traffic on a separate physical network (<i>example below</i>). If you do not have mezzanine cards, <b>skip this step</b>.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>1 – Control VLAN 2 – iLO VLAN 3 – OAM VLAN 4 – Blade-to-Blade non-Routable VLAN 5,6 – Signaling VLANs</p> <p>Legend:  <span style="color: green;">—</span> 100 Mbps Link  <span style="color: orange;">—</span> 1 Gbps Link  <span style="color: red;">—</span> 10 Gbps Link  <span style="color: yellow;">—</span> 4 x 1 Gbps Link Aggregation</p> </div> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/TVOEcfg.sh --xmivlan=&lt;XMI_VLAN_ID&gt; --imivlan=&lt;IMI_VLAN_ID&gt; mezz</pre>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

<p>4</p> <p>□</p>	<p><b>TVOE Server:</b> No Mezzanine card/ No segregated OAM/XMI network configuration</p>	<p>If your TVOE server blade <b>DOES NOT</b> have mezzanine cards AND/OR you will NOT be running OAM/XMI traffic over a separate physical network (example below).</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>1 – Control VLAN                  2 – Platform Management / iLO VLAN                  3 – OAM VLAN                  4 – Blade-to-Blade non-Routable VLAN                  5 – Signaling VLAN</p> </div> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/TVOEcfg.sh --xmivlan=&lt;XMI_VLAN_ID&gt; --imivlan=&lt;IMI_VLAN_ID&gt;</pre>
-------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>TVOE Server:</b> Verify TVOE configuration	<p>XMI_VLAN_ID is the VLAN ID for the XMI network in this installation, and IMI_VLAN_ID is the VLAN ID for the IMI network in this installation. For deployments with aggregation switches, the IMI and XMI VLAN IDs will be the values of the "INTERNAL-IMI" and "INTERNAL-XMI" VLAN ids, respectively. For layer-2 only deployments, the IMI and XMI VLAN ids will be obtained from the customer.</p> <p>Upon executing the proper version of the TVOEcfg.sh script, you should see an output similar to the following (example shows output without the "mezz" parameter):</p> <pre>Using onboard NICs ... Interface bond0.3 added Interface bond0.4 added Setting up the bridge and unsetting network info Interface bond0.3 was updated. Bridge xmi added! Setting up the bridge and unsetting network info Interface bond0.4 was updated. Bridge imi added!</pre> <p>The prompt will return.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If for any reason, you ran the wrong version of the TVOEcfg.sh command, you can execute the following command to reset the networking configuration so you can repeat either steps 3 or 4:</p> <pre>Sudo ./usr/TKLC/TVOEclean.sh</pre>
-------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

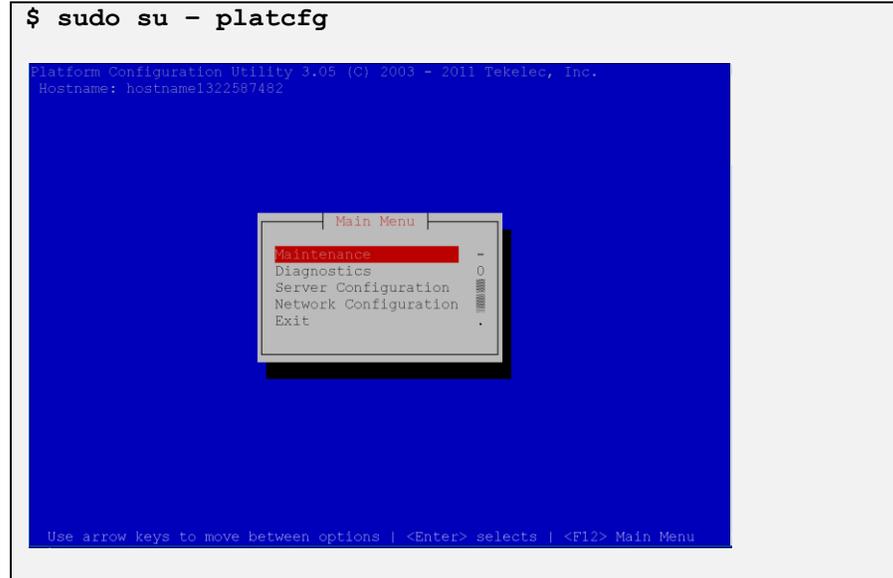
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>TVOE Server:</b> Configure XMI IP and Default Route</p>	<p>Configure IP address on the XMI network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=xmi --address=&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_ADDRESS&gt; --netmask=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Netmask/Prefix&gt;</pre> <pre>/sys/class/net/bond1/bonding/primary has 0 lines, nothing to do.</pre> <pre>Interface xmi was updated.</pre> <p>Restart network services:</p> <pre>\$ sudo service network restart [wait for the prompt to return]</pre> <p>Set the default route:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=default --device=xmi --gateway=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre> <pre>Route to xmi added.</pre>
<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>TVOE Server:</b> Configure NetBackup Dedicated Interface and Bridge (Optional)</p>	<p>In these examples, &lt;interface&gt; should be replaced with the actual Ethernet interface that will be used as the dedicated NetBackup port. For instance, “<i>eth01</i>” or “<i>eth22</i>”.</p> <p>Un-bonded Ethernet Interface:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;Ethernet interface&gt; --slave=no --onboot=yes</pre> <p><b>[OPTIONAL]</b> If this installation is using jumbo frames, set the Ethernet interface MTU to the desired jumbo frame size:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;Ethernet interface&gt; --MTU=&lt;NetBackup_MTU_size&gt;</pre> <p>Create NetBackup VM Bridge Interface:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=netbackup --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;Ethernet interface&gt; --onboot=yes</pre>

**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

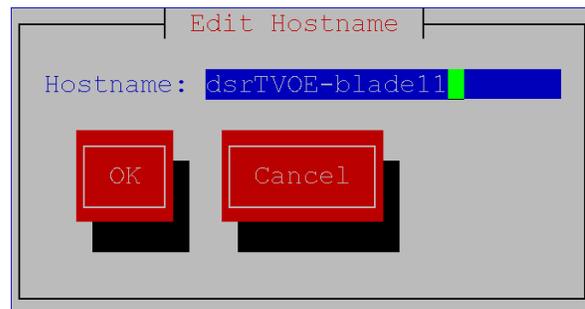
8 □	<b>TVOE Server:</b> Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=NetBackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_IP_Adress&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt;</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=&lt;NetBackup_Svr_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt; --gateway=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre>
--------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

9 **TVOE**  
☐ **Server: Set**  
**Hostname**



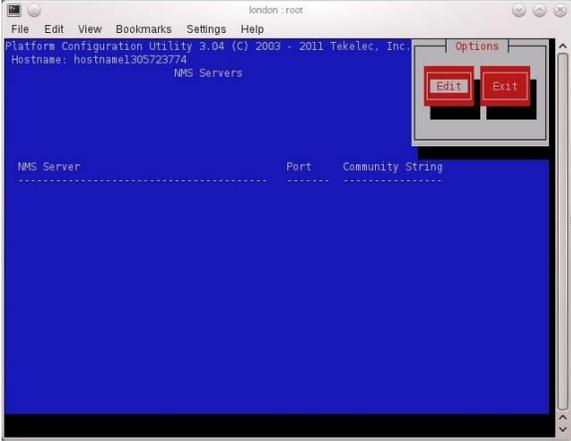
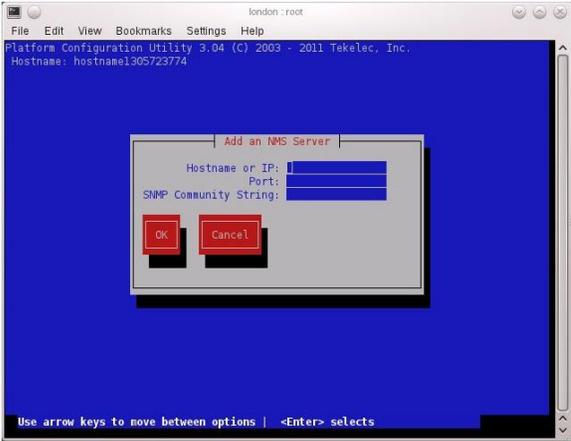
Navigate to **Server Configuration->Hostname-> Edit** and enter a new hostname for your server:



Press **OK** and select and continue to press Exit until you are at the placfg main menu again.

**Note:** Although the new hostname has been properly configured and committed at this point, it will not appear on your command prompt unless you log out and log back in again.

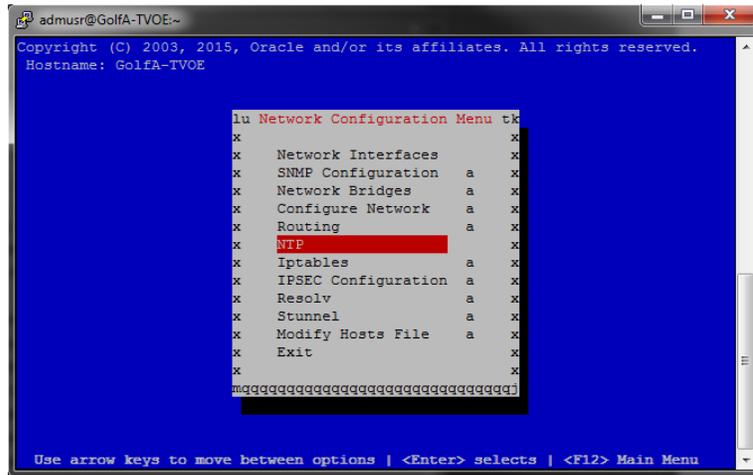
**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

<p>10</p> <p>□</p>	<p><b>TVOE Server: Configure SNMP</b></p>	<p>From the platcfg main menu, navigate to <b>Network Configuration -&gt; SNMP Configuration -&gt; NMS Configuration</b></p>  <p>Press <b>Edit</b>. Choose <b>Add a New NMS Server</b></p>  <p>Enter the following NMS servers, pressing <b>OK</b> after each one and then selecting the <b>Add NMS</b> option again:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the Hostname/IP of the Customer NMS Server, for port, enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document.</li> <li>2. Enter the IP of the SOAM VIP, for port enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document</li> </ol> <p>Press <b>Exit</b>. Select <b>Yes</b> when prompted to restart the Alarm Routing Service. Once Done, press <b>Exit</b> to quit to the platcfg main menu.</p>
--------------------	-------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

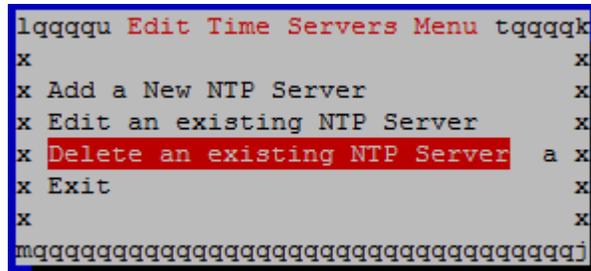
**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

11  **RMS iLO/iLOM:**  
Delete PMAC VM as NTP Source on RMS

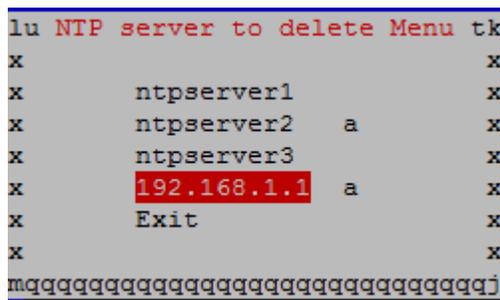
Navigate to **Network Configuration ->NTP**.



Select **Delete an existing NTP Server**

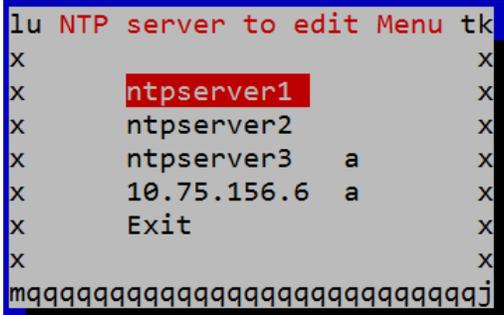
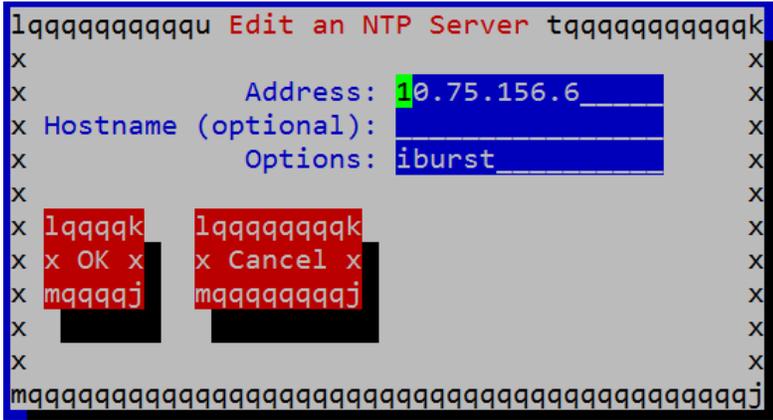


Select the PMAC VM Control IP, Click **[Enter]**

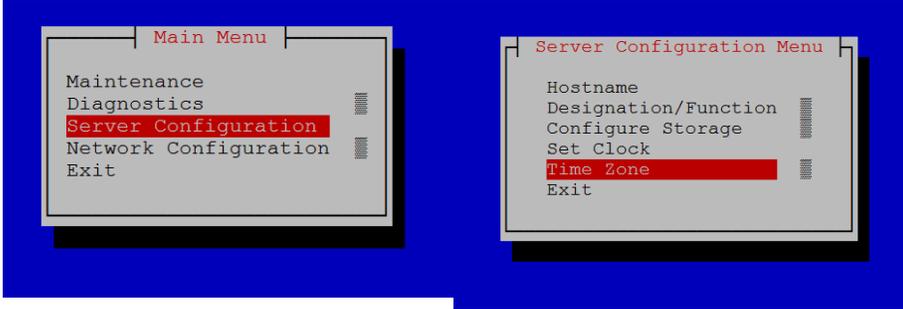
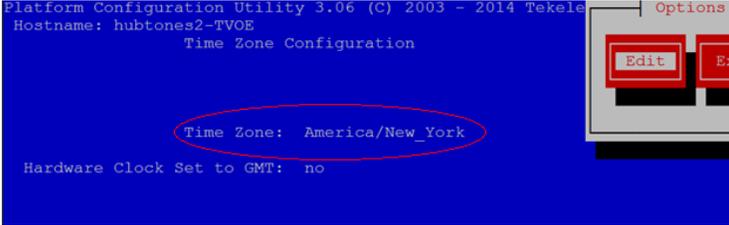
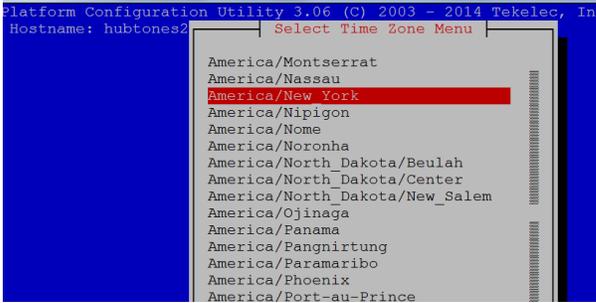


You will be returned to the **NTP Menu**

**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

<p>12</p> <p>☐</p>	<p><b>TVOE Server:</b> Configure NTP - Edit an existing NTP Server.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Edit an existing NTP Server. The <b>NTP Server to edit Menu</b> window is displayed. </li> <li>2. Select appropriate NTP server &amp; edit the details </li> <li>3. Enter Appropriate data, and select <b>OK</b></li> </ol> <p>Press <b>Exit</b> to return to the platcfg menu.</p>
--------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

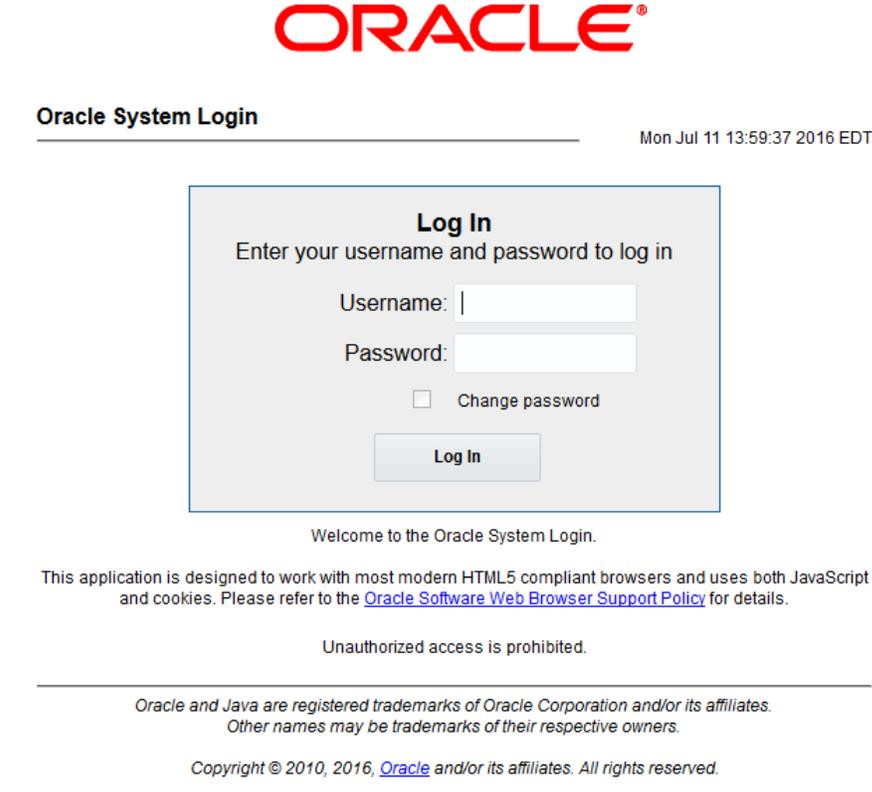
**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

<p>13</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>TVOE Server:</b> Configure Time Zone</p>	<pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>Navigate to <b>Server Configuration-&gt;Time Zone</b></p>   <p>If the time zone displayed matches the time zone you desire, then you can continue to hit <b>Exit</b> until you are out of the platcfg program. If you want a different time zone, then proceed with this instruction.</p> <p>Click <b>Edit</b></p>  <p>Select the desired time zone from the list and press <b>Enter</b> Continue pressing <b>Exit</b> until you are out of the platcfg program.</p>
<p>14</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>TVOE Server:</b> Reboot</p>	<p>Reboot the server by executing the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

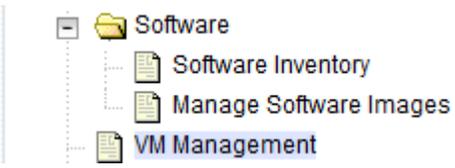
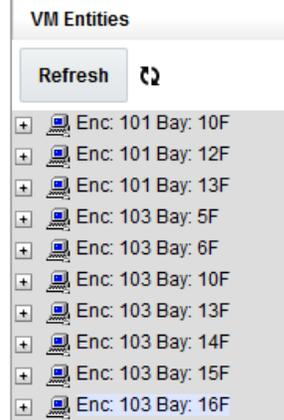
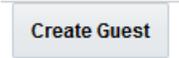
**Procedure 11: Configure SOAM TVOE Server Blades**

15 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>TVOE server:</b> Repeat Procedure for other TVOE blades.	Configuration of this TVOE server blade is complete. Repeat this procedure from the beginning for other TVOE hosts that need to be configured.
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install SDS (Optional)</b>	If this deployment contains SDS, SDS can now be installed. Refer to document referenced in [4].

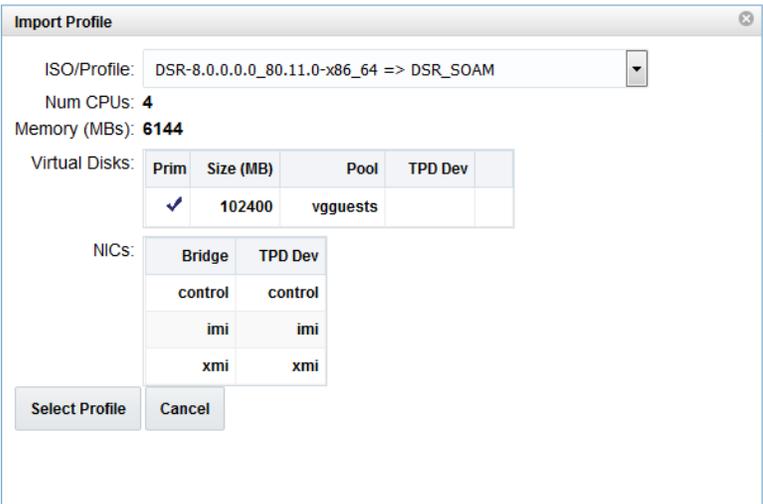
**Procedure 12: Create SOAM Guest VMs**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps needed to create a DSR SOAM virtual machine (referred to as a “guest”) on a TVOE server blade. It must be repeated for every SOAM server you wish to install.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE has been installed and configured on the target blade server.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>http://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;</p> </div> <p>Login as <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr/> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>

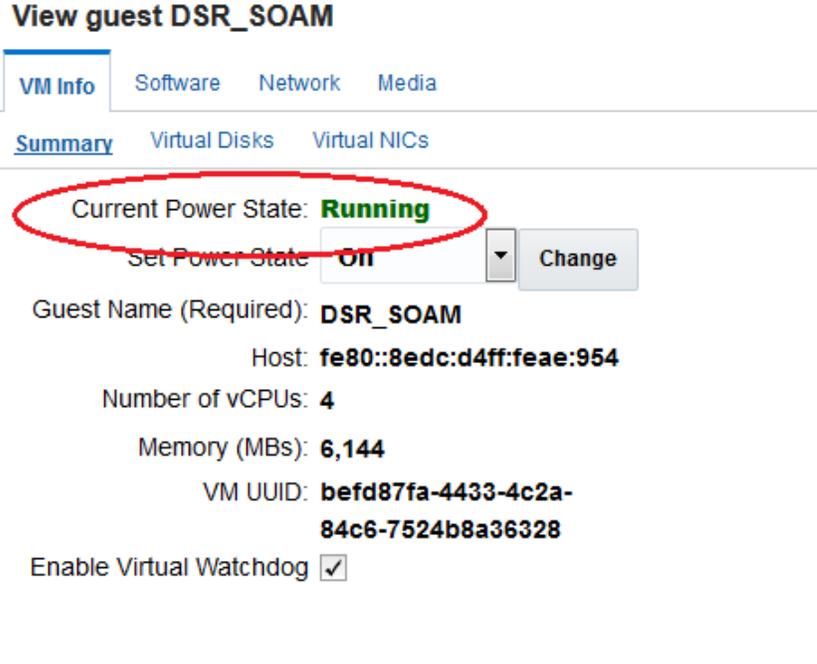
**Procedure 12: Create SOAM Guest VMs**

<p>2</p> <p>☐</p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b>          Navigate to VM Management of the Target Server Blade</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b></p>  <p>Select the TVOE server blade server from the <b>VM Entities</b> listing on the left side of the screen. The selected server's guest machine configuration will then be displayed in the remaining area of the window.</p>  <p>Click <b>Create Guest</b></p> 
-------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

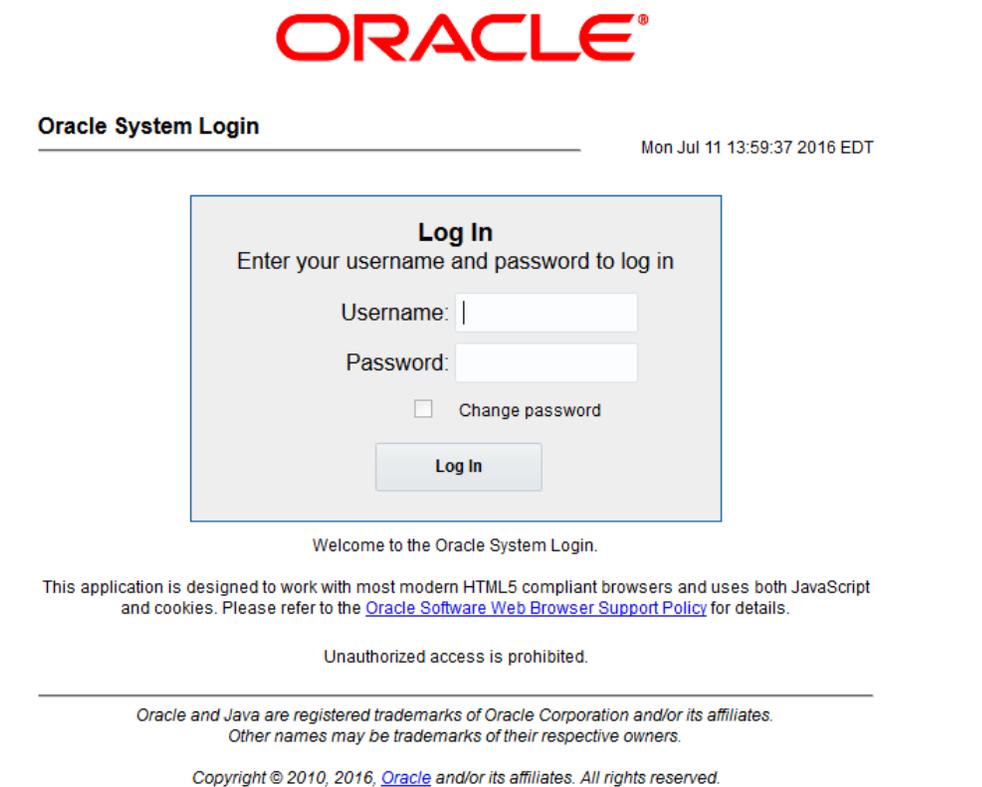
**Procedure 12: Create SOAM Guest VMs**

3	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Configure VM Guest Parameters</p>	<p>Select <b>Import Profile</b></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <span>Create</span> <span>Import Profile</span> <span>Cancel</span> </div>  <p>From the <b>“ISO/Profile”</b> drop-down box, select the entry that matches depending on the hardware that your SOAM VM TVOE server is running on and your preference for NetBackup interfaces:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 33%;">SOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)</th> <th style="width: 33%;">Dedicated Netbackup Interface?</th> <th style="width: 33%;">Choose Profile (&lt;Application ISO NAME&gt;→)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade</td> <td style="text-align: center;">No</td> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>DSR_SOAM</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Yes</td> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>DSR_SOAM_NBD</b></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> Application_ISO_NAME is the name of the DSR Application ISO to be installed on this SOAM</p> <p>Press <b>Select Profile</b>.</p> <p>You can edit the name, if you wish. For instance: <b>“DSR_SOAM_A,”</b> or <b>DSR_SOAM_B”</b>. (This will not become the ultimate hostname. It is just an internal tag for the VM host manager.)</p> <p>Press <b>Create</b></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <span>Create</span> <span>Import Profile</span> <span>Cancel</span> </div>	SOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)	Dedicated Netbackup Interface?	Choose Profile (<Application ISO NAME>→)	HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	No	<b>DSR_SOAM</b>	HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	Yes	<b>DSR_SOAM_NBD</b>
SOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)	Dedicated Netbackup Interface?	Choose Profile (<Application ISO NAME>→)									
HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	No	<b>DSR_SOAM</b>									
HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	Yes	<b>DSR_SOAM_NBD</b>									

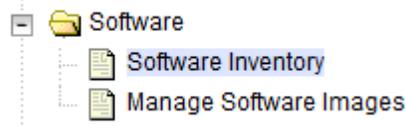
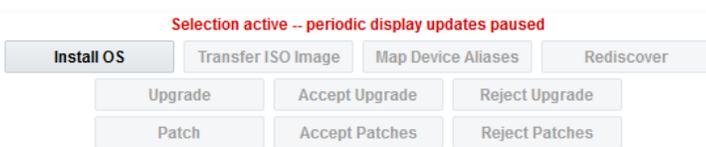
**Procedure 12: Create SOAM Guest VMs**

<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Wait for Guest Creation to Complete</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b> to monitor the progress of the guest creation task. A separate task will appear for each guest creation that you have launched.</p> <p>Wait or refresh the screen until you see that the guest creation task has completed successfully.</p> 
<p>5 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Verify Guest Machine is Running</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b></p> <p>Select the TVOE server blade on which the guest machine was just created.</p> <p>Look at the list of guests present on the blade and verify that you see a guest that matches the name you configured and that its status is <b>“Running”</b>.</p>  <p>VM Creation for this guest is complete. Repeat from <b>Step 2</b> for any remaining SOAM VMs (<i>for instance, the standby SOAM</i>) that must be created.</p>

**Procedure 13: IPM Blades and VMs**

<p><b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to install TPD on Blade servers and Blade server guest VMs</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> Enclosures containing the blade servers targeted for IPM that have been configured.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE has been installed and configured on Blade servers that will host DSR NOAM VMs.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> DSR NOAM and SOAM Guest VMs have been created successfully.</p> <p><b>Needed material:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- TPD Media (64-bits)</li> </ul> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 

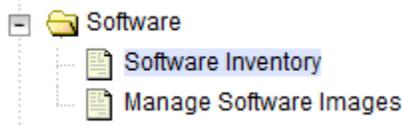
**Procedure 13: IPM Blades and VMs**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Select Servers for OS install</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p>  <p>Select the servers (<i>VMs, IPFEs, MPs, Etc.</i>) you want to IPM. If you want to install the same OS image to more than one server, you may select multiple servers by clicking multiple rows individually. Selected rows will be highlighted in green.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> VM's will have the text "<b>Guest: &lt;VM_GUEST_NAME&gt;</b>" underneath the physical blade or RMS that hosts them.</p>  <p>Click on <b>Install OS</b></p> 																												
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Initiate OS Install</p>	<p>The left side of this screen shows the servers to be affected by this OS installation. From the list of available bootable images on the right side of the screen, select one OS image to install to all of the selected servers.</p> <p><b>Targets</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Entity</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Select Image</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Image Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Architecture</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>TPD 84.28 for mutant build sanity</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0f0ff;"> <td>TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.23.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.25.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>TPD 88.25</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TVOE-3.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Click on <b>Start Install</b>, a confirmation window will pop up, click on <b>Ok</b> to proceed with the install.</p> 	Entity	Status	Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM		Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description	TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TPD 84.28 for mutant build sanity	TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.23.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64		TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64		TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.25.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TPD 88.25	TVOE-3.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	
Entity	Status																													
Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM																														
Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description																											
TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TPD 84.28 for mutant build sanity																											
TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.23.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64																												
TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64																												
TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.25.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TPD 88.25																											
TVOE-3.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64																												
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Monitor OS Install</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b> to monitor the progress of the OS Installation background task. A separate task will appear for each blade affected.</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>275</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>RMS: 5020TVOE Guest: Maui_SOAM2</td> <td>Done: TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:13:38</td> <td>2016-09-18 23:37:09</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>274</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>RMS: 5020TVOE Guest: Maui_SOAM1</td> <td>Done: TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>0:13:41</td> <td>2016-09-18 23:37:06</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When the installation is complete, the task will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".</p>	275	Install OS	RMS: 5020TVOE Guest: Maui_SOAM2	Done: TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:13:38	2016-09-18 23:37:09	100%	274	Install OS	RMS: 5020TVOE Guest: Maui_SOAM1	Done: TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:13:41	2016-09-18 23:37:06	100%										
275	Install OS	RMS: 5020TVOE Guest: Maui_SOAM2	Done: TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:13:38	2016-09-18 23:37:09	100%																						
274	Install OS	RMS: 5020TVOE Guest: Maui_SOAM1	Done: TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64	COMPLETE	N/A	0:13:41	2016-09-18 23:37:06	100%																						

**Procedure 14: Install the Application Software**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to install Diameter Signaling Router on the Blade servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>The screenshot shows the Oracle System Login interface. At the top is the Oracle logo in red. Below it is the text 'Oracle System Login' and the date 'Mon Jul 11 13:59:37 2016 EDT'. A central box titled 'Log In' contains the instruction 'Enter your username and password to log in'. It has two input fields: 'Username:' and 'Password:'. Below these is a checkbox labeled 'Change password' and a 'Log In' button. At the bottom of the page, there is a 'Welcome to the Oracle System Login.' message, a note about browser compatibility, a 'Unauthorized access is prohibited.' warning, and copyright information for Oracle and Java.</p> </div>

**Procedure 14: Install the Application Software**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Select Servers for Application install</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Software -&gt; Software Inventory.</b></p>  <p>Select the servers on which the application is to be installed. If you want to install the same application image to more than one server, you may select multiple servers by clicking multiple rows individually. Selected rows will be highlighted in green.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> VM's will have the text <b>"Guest: &lt;VM_GUEST_NAME&gt;"</b> underneath the physical blade that hosts them.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Enc: <a href="#">103</a> Bay: <a href="#">6F</a></td> <td style="padding: 2px;">192.168.1.78</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">hostname4dcea68bb6ad</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">TPD (x86_64)</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Guest: <a href="#">DSR_SOAM</a></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>Click on <b>Upgrade</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center; color: red; font-weight: bold;">Selection active -- periodic display updates paused</p> <table style="width: 100%; text-align: center;"> <tr> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Install OS</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Transfer ISO Image</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Map Device Aliases</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Rediscover</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Upgrade</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Accept Upgrade</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Reject Upgrade</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Patch</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Accept Patches</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">Reject Patches</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> </div>	Enc: <a href="#">103</a> Bay: <a href="#">6F</a>	192.168.1.78	hostname4dcea68bb6ad	TPD (x86_64)	7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0	Guest: <a href="#">DSR_SOAM</a>					Install OS	Transfer ISO Image	Map Device Aliases	Rediscover	Upgrade	Accept Upgrade	Reject Upgrade		Patch	Accept Patches	Reject Patches	
Enc: <a href="#">103</a> Bay: <a href="#">6F</a>	192.168.1.78	hostname4dcea68bb6ad	TPD (x86_64)	7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0																				
Guest: <a href="#">DSR_SOAM</a>																								
Install OS	Transfer ISO Image	Map Device Aliases	Rediscover																					
Upgrade	Accept Upgrade	Reject Upgrade																						
Patch	Accept Patches	Reject Patches																						

**Procedure 14: Install the Application Software**

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Initiate Application Install</p>	<p>The left side of this screen shows the servers to be affected by this application installation. From the list of available bootable images on the right side of the screen, select one application image to install to all of the selected servers.</p> <p><b>Software Upgrade - Select Image</b></p> <p>Tasks* ▼</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div> <p><b>Targets</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Entity</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <div> <p><b>Select Image</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Image Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Architecture</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DSR-7.0.1.0.0_70.28.7-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>DSR mutant build 70.28.7</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0f0ff;"> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.10.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>DSR-8.1.0.0.0_81.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>DSR-8.1.0.0.0_81.2.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>DSR 81.2.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>TPD 84.28 for mutant build san</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.23.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.25.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>TPD 88.25</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TVOE-3.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> </div> <p>Click on <b>Start Upgrade</b>, a confirmation window will pop up, click on <b>Ok</b> to proceed with the install.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center; gap: 20px;"> <span>Start Software Upgrade</span> <span>Back</span> </div>	Entity	Status	Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM		Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description	DSR-7.0.1.0.0_70.28.7-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	DSR mutant build 70.28.7	DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.10.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64		DSR-8.1.0.0.0_81.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64		DSR-8.1.0.0.0_81.2.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	DSR 81.2.0	TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TPD 84.28 for mutant build san	TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.23.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64		TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64		TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.25.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TPD 88.25	TVOE-3.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	
Entity	Status																																													
Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM																																														
Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description																																											
DSR-7.0.1.0.0_70.28.7-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	DSR mutant build 70.28.7																																											
DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.10.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64																																												
DSR-8.1.0.0.0_81.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64																																												
DSR-8.1.0.0.0_81.2.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	DSR 81.2.0																																											
TPD.install-6.7.1.0.0_84.28.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TPD 84.28 for mutant build san																																											
TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.23.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64																																												
TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64																																												
TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.25.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TPD 88.25																																											
TVOE-3.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64																																												
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Monitor the installation status</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b> to monitor the progress of the Application Installation task. A separate task will appear for each blade affected.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Task Monitoring</b></p> <p>Filter* ▼</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Task</th> <th>Target</th> <th>Status</th> <th>State</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>322</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM</td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>321</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM</td> <td>Done: TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When the installation is complete, the task will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".</p>	ID	Task	Target	Status	State	322	Upgrade	Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM	Success	COMPLETE	321	Install OS	Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM	Done: TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	COMPLETE																													
ID	Task	Target	Status	State																																										
322	Upgrade	Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM	Success	COMPLETE																																										
321	Install OS	Enc:103 Bay:6F Guest: DSR_SOAM	Done: TPD.install-7.2.0.0.0_88.24.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	COMPLETE																																										

**Procedure 14: Install the Application Software**

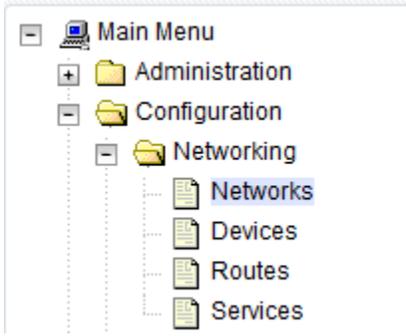
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Accept/Reject Upgrade</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b> to accept the software installation. Select all the servers on which the application has been installed in the previous steps and click on <b>Accept Upgrade</b> as shown below.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr style="background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <td style="padding: 2px;">TPD (x86_64)</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">DSR</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">8.0.0.0.0-80.10.0 Pending Upgrade Acc/Rej</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #f2f2f2;"> <td style="padding: 2px;">TPD (x86_64)</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">DSR</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">8.0.0.0.0-80.10.0</td> </tr> </table> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="color: red; font-weight: bold; font-size: small;">Selection active -- periodic display updates paused</p> <table style="margin: auto; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Install OS</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Transfer ISO Image</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Map Device Aliases</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Rediscover</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2" style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Upgrade</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Accept Upgrade</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Reject Upgrade</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Patch</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Accept Patches</td> <td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin: 2px;">Reject Patches</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> Once the upgrade has been accepted, the App version will change from <b>“Pending Acc/Rej”</b> to the version number of the application.</p>	TPD (x86_64)	7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0	DSR	8.0.0.0.0-80.10.0 Pending Upgrade Acc/Rej	TPD (x86_64)	7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0	DSR	8.0.0.0.0-80.10.0	Install OS	Transfer ISO Image	Map Device Aliases	Rediscover	Upgrade		Accept Upgrade	Reject Upgrade	Patch	Accept Patches	Reject Patches	
TPD (x86_64)	7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0	DSR	8.0.0.0.0-80.10.0 Pending Upgrade Acc/Rej																			
TPD (x86_64)	7.2.0.0.0-88.24.0	DSR	8.0.0.0.0-80.10.0																			
Install OS	Transfer ISO Image	Map Device Aliases	Rediscover																			
Upgrade		Accept Upgrade	Reject Upgrade																			
Patch	Accept Patches	Reject Patches																				

### 4.3.2 Configure SOAMs

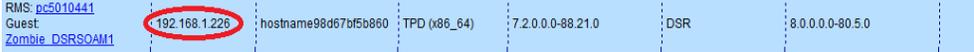
#### Procedure 15: Configure SOAM NE

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM Network Element</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

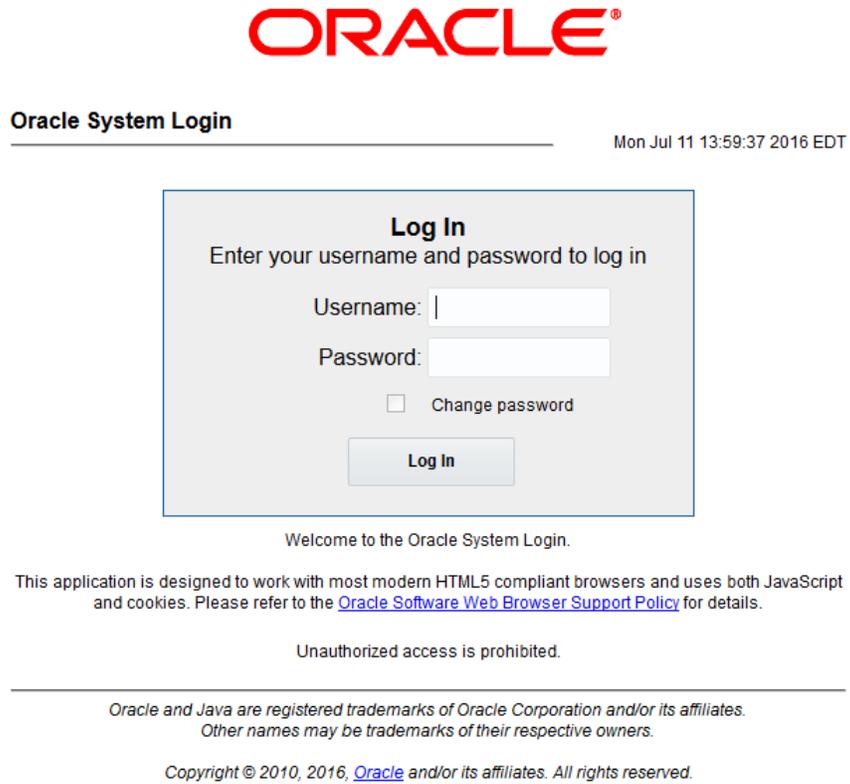
**Procedure 15: Configure SOAM NE**

2	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Create the SOAM Network Element using an XML File</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Networking -&gt; Networks</b></p>  <p>Refer to <b>Appendix A:</b> Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles for a sample Network Element xml file</p> <p>Select the <b>Browse</b> button, and enter the pathname of the SOAM network XML file:</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>To create a new Network Element, upload a valid configuration file:</p> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> zombieSOAM.xml    <input type="button" value="Upload File"/> </div> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p> <p>Select the <b>Upload File</b> button to upload the XML file and configure the SOAM Network Element.</p> <p>Once the data has been uploaded, you should see a folder appear with the name of your network element. Click on this folder and you will get a drop-down which describes the individual networks that are now configured:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p style="font-size: small; margin: 0;">Global    ZombieNOAM <span style="float: right;">ZombieDRNOAM    <b>ZombieSOAM</b></span></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; font-size: x-small;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Network Name</th> <th>Network Type</th> <th>Default</th> <th>Locked</th> <th>Routed</th> <th>VLAN</th> <th>Configured Interfaces</th> <th>Network</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>XMI</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>4</td> <td>0</td> <td>10.240.213.0/24</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IMI</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>No</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> <td>3</td> <td>0</td> <td>169.254.1.0/24</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Network Name	Network Type	Default	Locked	Routed	VLAN	Configured Interfaces	Network	XMI	OAM	Yes	Yes	Yes	4	0	10.240.213.0/24	IMI	OAM	No	Yes	No	3	0	169.254.1.0/24
Network Name	Network Type	Default	Locked	Routed	VLAN	Configured Interfaces	Network																			
XMI	OAM	Yes	Yes	Yes	4	0	10.240.213.0/24																			
IMI	OAM	No	Yes	No	3	0	169.254.1.0/24																			

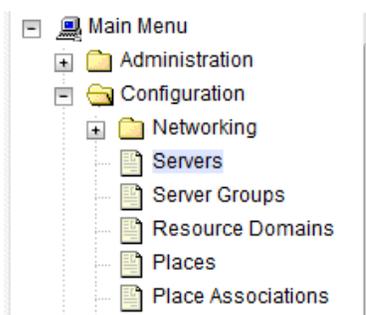
**Procedure 16: Configure the SOAM Servers**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Exchange SSH keys between SOAM site's local PMAC and the SOAM Server</b></p>	<p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the SOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p>  <p>Note the IP address for the SOAM server.</p> <p>Login to the PMAC terminal as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the <b>admusr</b> user, exchange SSH keys for <b>admusr</b> between the PMAC and the SOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the SOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;SO1_Control_IP Address&gt;</pre>
<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Exchange SSH keys between NOAM and PMAC at the SOAM site (if necessary)</b></p>	<p><b>Note:</b> If this SOAM shares the same PMAC as the NOAM, then you can skip this step.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the NOAM VIP, as the <b>admusr</b>, exchange SSH keys for admusr between the NOAM and the PMAC for this SOAM site using the keyexchange utility.</p> <p>When prompted for the password, enter the admusr password for the PMAC server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;SO1_Site_PMAC_Mgmt_IP_Address&gt;</pre>

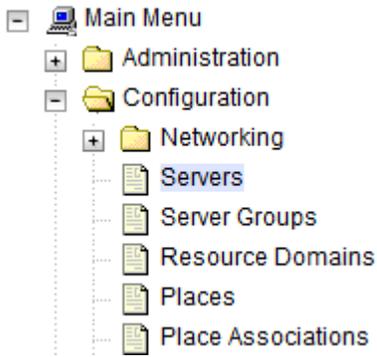
**Procedure 16: Configure the SOAM Servers**

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"></div>
-------------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 16: Configure the SOAM Servers**

4	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server into servers table (the first or server).</p> <p><b>Adding a new server</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;">Hostname *</td> <td>ZombiesSOAM1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Role *</td> <td>SYSTEM OAM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>System ID</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Hardware Profile</td> <td>DSR TVOE Guest</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Element Name *</td> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> </tr> </table> <p>Fill in the fields as follows:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</p> <p><b>Role:</b> <b>SYSTEM OAM</b></p> <p><b>System ID:</b> &lt;Site System ID&gt;</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> <b>DSR TVOE Guest</b></p> <p><b>Network Element Name:</b> [Choose NE from Drop Down Box]</p> <p>The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;">XMI (10.240.213.0/24)</td> <td style="width: 30%;">10.240.213.9</td> <td style="width: 20%;">xmi</td> <td style="width: 20%;"><input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IMI (169.254.1.0/24)</td> <td>169.254.1.9</td> <td>imi</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</td> </tr> </table> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select <b>xmi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select <b>imi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 60%;">NTP Server</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)&gt;</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button when you have completed entering all the server data.</p>	Hostname *	ZombiesSOAM1	Role *	SYSTEM OAM	System ID		Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest	Network Element Name *	ZombieSOAM	XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	10.240.213.9	xmi	<input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)	IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	169.254.1.9	imi	<input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes
Hostname *	ZombiesSOAM1																							
Role *	SYSTEM OAM																							
System ID																								
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest																							
Network Element Name *	ZombieSOAM																							
XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	10.240.213.9	xmi	<input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)																					
IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	169.254.1.9	imi	<input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)																					
NTP Server	Preferred?																							
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes																							

**Procedure 16: Configure the SOAM Servers**

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Export the Initial Configuration	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers</b>.</p>  <p>From the GUI screen, select the SOAM server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Export"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP:</b> Copy Configuration File to 1 <sup>st</sup> SOAM Server	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the NOAM VIP as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Use the <b>awpushcfg</b> utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the NOAM to the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server, using the Control network IP address for the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like <code>TKLCConfigData.&lt;hostname&gt;.sh</code>.</p> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the management network address from the PMAC.</li> <li>• Username: Use <b>admusr</b></li> <li>• Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server).</li> <li>• Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in <b>step 4</b></li> </ul>

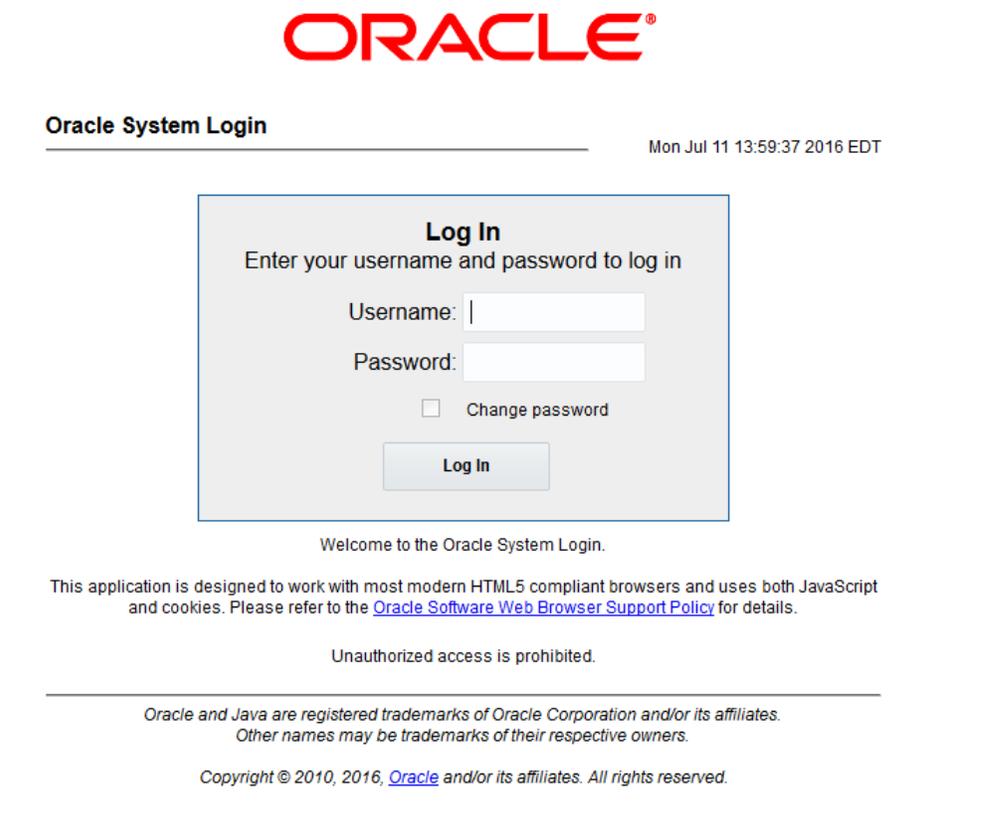
**Procedure 16: Configure the SOAM Servers**

<p>7 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>1<sup>st</sup> SOAM Server:</b> Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server console by establishing an ssh session from the NOAM VIP terminal console.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ ssh admusr@&lt;SO1_Control_IP&gt;</pre> <p>Login as the <i>admusr</i> user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named “<i>TKLCConfigData.sh</i>” in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>				
<p>8 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>1<sup>st</sup> SOAM Server:</b> Verify Server Health</p>	<p>Execute the following command on the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>				
<p>9 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Insert and Configure the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server</b></p>	<p>Repeat this procedure to insert and configure the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server, should be configured as so:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th> <th>Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)&gt;</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Instead of data for the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM Server, insert the network data for the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server, transfer the <i>TKLCConfigData</i> file to the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server, and reboot the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server when prompted at a terminal window.</p>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	Yes
NTP Server	Preferred?					
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	Yes					

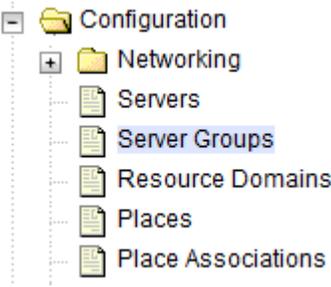
**Procedure 16: Configure the SOAM Servers**

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install Netbackup Client Software on SOAMs (Optional)</b>	If you are using NetBackup at this site, then execute <b>Procedure 10</b> again to install the NetBackup Client on all SOAM servers.
--------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

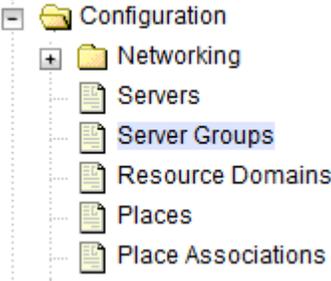
**Procedure 17: Configure the SOAM Server Group**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM Server Group</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</i></p> <p><i>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</i></p>

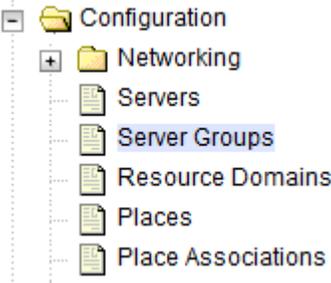
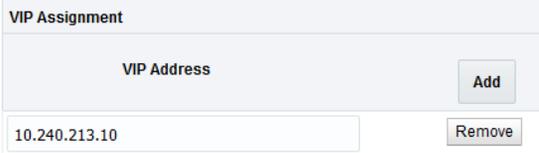
**Procedure 17: Configure the SOAM Server Group**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Enter SOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>After approximately <b>5 minutes</b> for the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server to reboot,</p> <p>Navigate to the GUI <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Insert</b></p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Add the SOAM Server Group name along with the values for the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Name:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</li> <li>• <b>Level:</b> B</li> <li>• <b>Parent</b> [Select the NOAM Server Group]</li> <li>• <b>Function:</b> DSR (Active/Standby Pair)</li> <li>• <b>WAN Replication Connection Count:</b> Use Default Value</li> </ul> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For DSR mated sites, repeat this step for additional SOAM server groups where the preferred SOAM spares may be entered prior to the active/Standby SOAMs.</p>
------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 17: Configure the SOAM Server Group**

3	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Edit the SOAM Server Group and add VIP</p>	<p>From the GUI <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select the new SOAM server group, and then select <b>Edit</b>.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center; gap: 10px;"> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Insert</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Edit</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Delete</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Report</span> </div> <p>Add both SOAM servers to the Server Group Primary Site by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Do not check any of the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkboxes.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Server</th> <th style="text-align: left;">SG Inclusion</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Preferred HA Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM2</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Click <b>Apply</b>.</p>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	ZombieSOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare	ZombieSOAM2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role									
ZombieSOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare									
ZombieSOAM2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare									

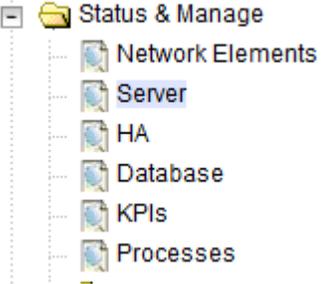
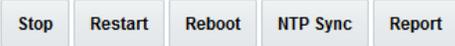
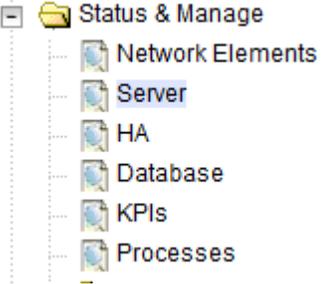
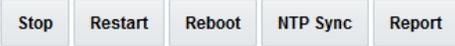
**Procedure 17: Configure the SOAM Server Group**

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Add VIP</p>	<p>From the GUI <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select the new SOAM server group, and then select <b>Edit</b>.</p>  <p>Add a SOAM VIP by click on <b>Add</b>. Fill in the <b>VIP Address</b> and press <b>Ok</b> as shown below:</p> 
------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

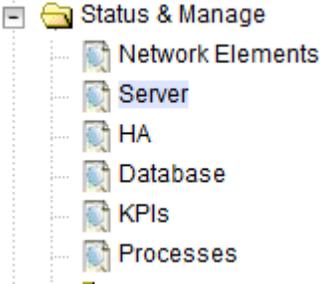
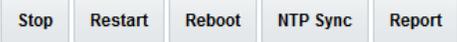
**Procedure 17: Configure the SOAM Server Group**

<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Edit the SOAM Server Group and add Preferred Spares for Site Redundancy (Optional)</p>	<p>If the Two Site Redundancy feature is wanted for the SOAM Server Group, add a SOAM server that is located in its Server Group Secondary Site by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox. Also check the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkbox.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server</th> <th>SG Inclusion</th> <th>Preferred HA Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM2</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAMsp</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If the Three Site Redundancy feature is wanted for the SOAM Server Group, add an additional SOAM server that is located in its Server Group Tertiary Site by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox. Also check the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkbox.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Preferred Spare</b> servers must be <i>Server Group Secondary &amp; Tertiary Sites</i>. There should be servers from three separate sites (locations).</p> <p>For more information about Server Group Secondary Site, Tertiary Site or Site Redundancy, see the 1.4 Terminology section.</p>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	ZombieSOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare	ZombieSOAM2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare	ZombieSOAMsp	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role												
ZombieSOAM1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare												
ZombieSOAM2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare												
ZombieSOAMsp	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare												
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Edit the SOAM Server Group and add additional SOAM VIPs (Optional)</p>	<p>Add additional SOAM VIPs by click on <b>Add</b>. Fill in the <b>“VIP Address”</b> and press <b>Ok</b> as shown below.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Additional SOAM VIPs only apply to SOAM Server Groups with Preferred Spare SOAMs.</p> <div> <p>VIP Assignment</p> <p>VIP Address <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Remove"/></p> </div>												
<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear</p>	<p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Alarms &amp; Events-&gt;View Active</b></p> <div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alarms &amp; Events             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View Active</li> <li>View History</li> <li>View Trap Log</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </div>												

**Procedure 17: Configure the SOAM Server Group**

<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Restart                  1<sup>st</sup> SOAM                  server</p>	<p>From the NOAMP GUI, select <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server.</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>1<sup>st</sup></b> SOAM server.</p> <p>Select the <b>Restart</b> button. Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup. Wait for restart to complete.</p> 
<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Restart                  2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM                  server</p>	<p>From the NOAMP GUI, select <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server.</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>2<sup>nd</sup></b> SOAM server.</p> <p>Select the <b>Restart</b> button. Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup. Wait for restart to complete.</p> 

**Procedure 17: Configure the SOAM Server Group**

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Restart all Preferred Spare SOAM Servers	<p>If additional Preferred Spare servers are not configured for <i>Secondary or Tertiary Sites</i>, this step can be skipped.</p> <p>If additional Preferred Spare servers are configured for <i>Secondary and/or Tertiary Sites</i>, continuing in the <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server</b></p>  <p>Select the all <b>Preferred Spare</b> SOAM servers.</p> <p>Select the <b>Restart</b> button. Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup.</p> 
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 18: Activate PCA (PCA Only)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to activate PCA</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>(PCA Only) Activate PCA Feature</b>	<p>If you are installing PCA, execute applicable procedures (Added SOAM site activation or complete system activation) from PCA activation guide [9] to activate PCA.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If not all SOAM sites are ready at this point, then you should repeat activation for each *new* SOAM site that comes online.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Ignore steps to restart DA-MPs and SBRs that have yet to be configured.</p>

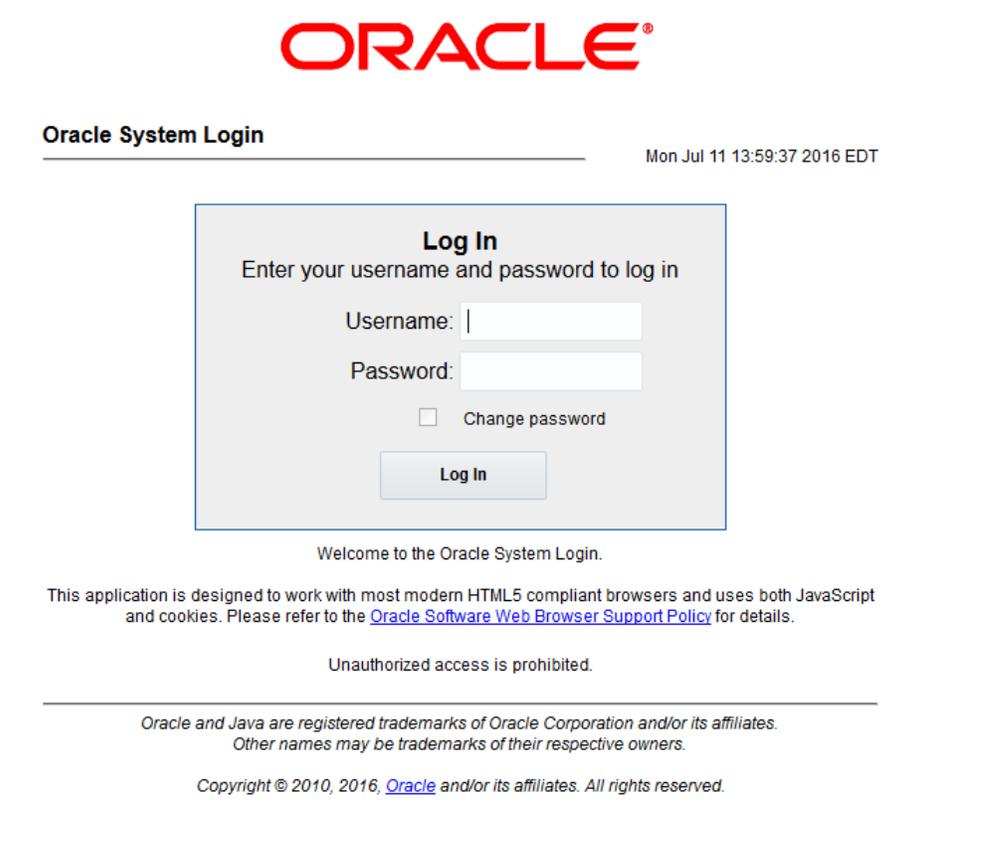
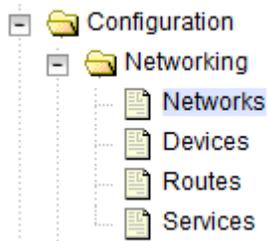
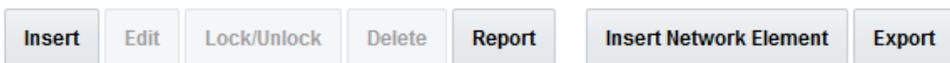
**Procedure 19: Activate DCA (DCA Only)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to activate DCA</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>(DCA Only) Activate PCA Feature</b>	<p>If you are installing DCA, execute procedures [14] to activate DCA Framework and Feature.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If not all SOAM sites are ready at this point, then you should repeat activation for each *new* SOAM site that comes online.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Ignore steps to restart DA-MPs and SBRs that have yet to be configured.</p>

**4.4 Configure MP Servers****4.4.1 Configure MP Blade Servers****Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p><b>Note: If you are adding MPs to expand an existing DSR which was upgraded from 7.x to 8.x, refer Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)</b></p> <p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure an MP Blade Servers (IPFE, SBR, SS7-MP, DA-MP)</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <input type="text" value="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;"/></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>

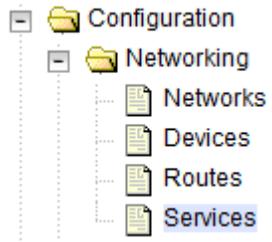
**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

											
<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Navigate to Signaling Network Configuration Screen</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Networking -&gt; Networks</b></p>  <p>Select the associated SOAM tab for the MP Server</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Network Name</th> <th>Network Type</th> <th>Default</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>XMI</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IMI</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>No</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Click on <b>Insert</b> in the lower left corner.</p> 	Network Name	Network Type	Default	XMI	OAM	Yes	IMI	OAM	No
Network Name	Network Type	Default									
XMI	OAM	Yes									
IMI	OAM	No									

**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAMP VIP:</b> Add Signaling Networks</p>	<p>You will see the following screen: <b>Insert Network</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Network Name *</td> <td>ksi1</td> <td>The name of this network. [Defau</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Type</td> <td>Signaling ▾</td> <td>The type of this network.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>VLAN ID *</td> <td>6</td> <td>The VLAN ID to use for this netw</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Address *</td> <td>10.196.227.0</td> <td>The network address of this netv</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Netmask *</td> <td>255.255.255.0</td> <td>Subnetting to apply to servers wi</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Router IP</td> <td>10.196.227.1</td> <td>The IP address of a router on thi: one monitored.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Default Network</td> <td><input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No</td> <td>A selection indicating whether th</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Routed</td> <td><input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</td> <td>Whether or not this network is ro</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Enter the <b>Network Name</b>, <b>VLAN ID</b>, <b>Network Address</b>, <b>Netmask</b>, and <b>Router IP</b> that matches the Signaling network</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Even if the network does not use VLAN Tagging, you should enter the correct VLAN ID here as indicated by the NAPD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>Signaling</b> for Network Type</li> <li>• Select <b>No</b> for Default Network</li> <li>• Select <b>Yes</b> for Routable.</li> </ul> <p>Press <b>OK</b>. if you are finished adding signaling networks</p> <p><b>-OR-</b></p> <p>Press <b>Apply</b> to save this signaling network and repeat this step to enter additional signaling networks.</p>	Field	Value	Description	Network Name *	ksi1	The name of this network. [Defau	Network Type	Signaling ▾	The type of this network.	VLAN ID *	6	The VLAN ID to use for this netw	Network Address *	10.196.227.0	The network address of this netv	Netmask *	255.255.255.0	Subnetting to apply to servers wi	Router IP	10.196.227.1	The IP address of a router on thi: one monitored.	Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether th	Routed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is ro
Field	Value	Description																											
Network Name *	ksi1	The name of this network. [Defau																											
Network Type	Signaling ▾	The type of this network.																											
VLAN ID *	6	The VLAN ID to use for this netw																											
Network Address *	10.196.227.0	The network address of this netv																											
Netmask *	255.255.255.0	Subnetting to apply to servers wi																											
Router IP	10.196.227.1	The IP address of a router on thi: one monitored.																											
Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether th																											
Routed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is ro																											
<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> [PCA/DCA Only]: Define SBR DB Replication Network</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> Execute this step only if you are defining a separate, dedicated network for SBR Replication.</p>																											

**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

		<p><b>Insert Network</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Network Name *</td> <td>replication</td> <td>The name of this</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Type</td> <td>Signaling</td> <td>The type of this n</td> </tr> <tr> <td>VLAN ID *</td> <td>9</td> <td>The VLAN ID to u</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Address *</td> <td>10.240.77.0</td> <td>The network add</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Netmask *</td> <td>255.255.255.0</td> <td>Subnetting to ap</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Router IP</td> <td>10.240.77.1</td> <td>The IP address c one monitored.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Default Network</td> <td><input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No</td> <td>A selection indic:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Routed</td> <td><input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</td> <td>Whether or not tr</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Ok Apply Cancel</p> <p>Enter the <b>Network Name</b>, <b>VLAN ID</b>, <b>Network Address</b>, <b>Netmask</b>, and <b>Router IP</b> that matches the SBR DB Replication network</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Even if the network does not use VLAN Tagging, you should enter the correct VLAN ID here as indicated by the NAPD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>Signaling</b> for Network Type</li> <li>• Select <b>No</b> for Default Network</li> <li>• Select <b>Yes</b> for Routable.</li> </ul> <p>Press <b>Ok</b>. If you are finished adding signaling networks –<b>OR</b>– Press <b>Apply</b> to save this signaling network and repeat this step to enter additional signaling networks.</p>	Field	Value	Description	Network Name *	replication	The name of this	Network Type	Signaling	The type of this n	VLAN ID *	9	The VLAN ID to u	Network Address *	10.240.77.0	The network add	Netmask *	255.255.255.0	Subnetting to ap	Router IP	10.240.77.1	The IP address c one monitored.	Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indic:	Routed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not tr
Field	Value	Description																											
Network Name *	replication	The name of this																											
Network Type	Signaling	The type of this n																											
VLAN ID *	9	The VLAN ID to u																											
Network Address *	10.240.77.0	The network add																											
Netmask *	255.255.255.0	Subnetting to ap																											
Router IP	10.240.77.1	The IP address c one monitored.																											
Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indic:																											
Routed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not tr																											
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> [PCA/DCA Only]: Perform Additional Service to Networks Mapping</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> Execute this step only if you are defining a separate, dedicated network for SBR Replication.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Services</b></p> 																											

**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

Select the **Edit** button

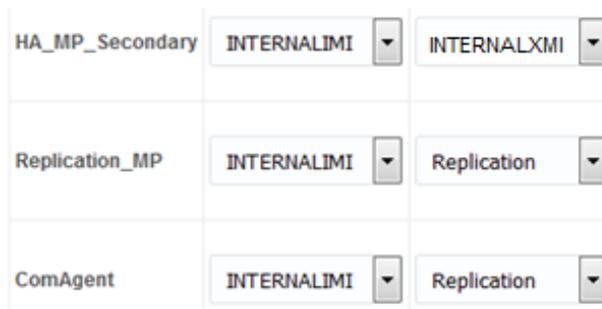


Set the Services according to the below two scenarios:

**1) If the Dual-Path HA Configuration is required :**

Oracle recommends that inter-NE network be set to the XMI network and the intra-NE network set to the IMI network for HA\_MP\_Secondary. This configuration uses the XMI network as a secondary path to preserve the HA status of SBRs grouped between multiple sites. If the Primary HA path “SBR DB Replication Network” becomes lost or impaired, the XMI network is used to preserve the HA state preventing the servers from entering into a scenario known as “HA Split-Brain”. Preventing “HA Split-Brain” will keep existing database in sync, but the DSR mate site will be isolated from the active SBR and will result in traffic loss until SBR DB Replication Network is restored.

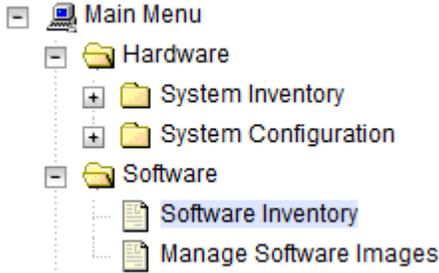
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network
HA_MP_Secondary	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>*
Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*
ComAgent	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*



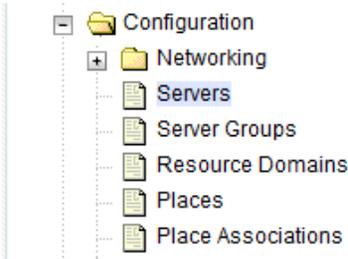
**2) If the Dual-Path HA Configuration is NOT required :**

Oracle recommends that inter-NE network be set to the SBR DB Replication (configured in step 5) and the intra-NE network set to the IMI network for HA\_MP\_Secondary. This configuration may allow an “HA Split-Brain” condition between the SBRs should the SBR DB Replication Network become lost or impaired. During a “HA Split-Brain” condition, an active SBR server would exist at each site but the database would not be in sync between the SBRs.

**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 33%;">Name</th> <th style="width: 33%;">Intra-NE Network</th> <th style="width: 33%;">Inter-NE Network</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>HA_MP_Secondary</td> <td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td>&lt;SBR DB Replication Network&gt;*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Replication_MP</td> <td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td>&lt;SBR DB Replication Network&gt;*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ComAgent</td> <td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td>&lt;SBR DB Replication Network&gt;*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; width: 100%; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <div style="width: 30%;">HA_MP_Secondary</div> <div style="width: 30%;">INTERNALIMI ▼</div> <div style="width: 30%;">Replication ▼</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; width: 100%; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <div style="width: 30%;">Replication_MP</div> <div style="width: 30%;">INTERNALIMI ▼</div> <div style="width: 30%;">Replication ▼</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; width: 100%;"> <div style="width: 30%;">ComAgent</div> <div style="width: 30%;">INTERNALIMI ▼</div> <div style="width: 30%;">Replication ▼</div> </div> </div> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button to apply the Service-to-Network selections.</p>	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	HA_MP_Secondary	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*	Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*	ComAgent	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network												
HA_MP_Secondary	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*												
Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*												
ComAgent	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*												
6	<p><b>PMAC:</b> Exchange SSH keys between MP site's local PMAC and the MP server</p>	<p>Use the MP site's PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the blade server that is to be an MP server. From the MP site's PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p>  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%;">Enc: 103 Bay: 1F</td> <td style="width: 33%;">192.168.1.207</td> <td style="width: 33%;">LG-MP2</td> <td style="width: 33%;">TPD (x86_64)</td> </tr> </table> <p>Note the IP address for an MP server.</p> <p>Login to the MP site's PMAC terminal as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the MP site's PMAC as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Exchange SSH keys for <b>admusr</b> between the PMAC and the MP blade server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the MP blade server.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;">\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;MP_Control_Blade_IP Address&gt;</pre> <p>When prompted for the password, enter the password for the <b>admusr</b> user of the</p>	Enc: 103 Bay: 1F	192.168.1.207	LG-MP2	TPD (x86_64)								
Enc: 103 Bay: 1F	192.168.1.207	LG-MP2	TPD (x86_64)											

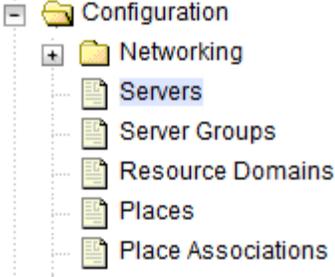
**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

		MP server.															
<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP server (Part 1)</p>	<p>Before creating the MP blade server, first identify the hardware profile</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> In the following step, you will select the profile that matches your MP physical hardware and enclosure networking environment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must go through the process of identifying the enclosure switches, mezzanine cards and Ethernet interfaces of the network prior and blade(s) used before selecting the profile.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Number of Enclosure Switches (Pairs)?</th> <th>Bonded Signaling Interfaces?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1-Pair</td> <td>1</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2-Pair</td> <td>2</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3-Pair-bonded</td> <td>3</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3-Pair-un-bonded</td> <td>3</td> <td>No</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> If none of the above profiles properly describe your MP server blade, then you will have to create your own in a text editor (<b>See Figure 7 of Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles</b>) and copy it into the <b>/var/TKLC/appworks/profiles/</b> directory of the active NOAM server, the standby NOAM server, and both the DR NOAM servers (<i>if applicable</i>).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> After transferring the above file, set the proper file permission by executing the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 777 /var/TKLC/appworks/profiles/&lt;profile name&gt;</pre> <p>Make note of the profile used here, as it will be used in server creation in the following step.</p>	Profile Name	Number of Enclosure Switches (Pairs)?	Bonded Signaling Interfaces?	1-Pair	1	Yes	2-Pair	2	Yes	3-Pair-bonded	3	Yes	3-Pair-un-bonded	3	No
Profile Name	Number of Enclosure Switches (Pairs)?	Bonded Signaling Interfaces?															
1-Pair	1	Yes															
2-Pair	2	Yes															
3-Pair-bonded	3	Yes															
3-Pair-un-bonded	3	No															
<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP server (Part 2)</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Servers</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the new MP server into servers table.</p> <div> <input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Export"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </div> <p>Fill out the following values:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> <a href="#">&lt;Hostname&gt;</a></p>															

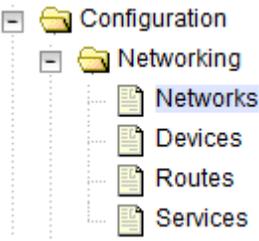
**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

		<p><b>Role:</b> <b>MP</b>  <b>Network Element:</b> <a href="#">[Choose Network Element]</a>  <b>Hardware Profile:</b> Select the profile that matches your MP physical hardware and enclosure networking environment from <b>step 8</b>.  <b>Location:</b> <a href="#">&lt;enter an optional location description&gt;</a></p> <p>The interface configuration form will now appear.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>OAM Interfaces [At least one interface is required.]:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Network</th> <th style="width: 35%;">IP Address</th> <th style="width: 35%;">Interface</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>XMI (10.240.213.0/24)</td> <td><input type="text" value="10.240.213.44"/></td> <td>bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IMI (169.254.1.0/24)</td> <td><input type="text" value="169.254.1.6"/></td> <td>bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>xsi1 (10.196.227.0/24)</td> <td><input type="text" value="10.196.227.44"/></td> <td>bond1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (6)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> If networks have been configured previously but are not required on the server, simply remove the populated network IP from the IP Address field and this device will not be created on the server.</p> <p>Enter the IP addresses for all networks. Select the correct bond or interface. Ensure the correct bond and VLAN tagging (if required) is selected.</p> <p><b>Optional:</b> If dedicated network for SBR replication has been defined, enter the SBR replication IP address. Select the proper bond or interface, and <b>select the VLAN checkbox if VLAN tagging is required.</b></p>	Network	IP Address	Interface	XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	<input type="text" value="10.240.213.44"/>	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)	IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	<input type="text" value="169.254.1.6"/>	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)	xsi1 (10.196.227.0/24)	<input type="text" value="10.196.227.44"/>	bond1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (6)
Network	IP Address	Interface												
XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	<input type="text" value="10.240.213.44"/>	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)												
IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	<input type="text" value="169.254.1.6"/>	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)												
xsi1 (10.196.227.0/24)	<input type="text" value="10.196.227.44"/>	bond1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (6)												
<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP server (Part 3)</p>	<p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 60%;">NTP Server</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center;">No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>&lt;MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center;">No</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> For multiple enclosure deployments, prefer the SOAM TVOE Host that is located in the same enclosure as the MP Server.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in to finish MP server insertion.</p>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	No	<MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address>	No				
NTP Server	Preferred?													
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes													
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	No													
<MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address>	No													
<p>10</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Export the Configuration</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p>												

**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

		 <p>From the GUI screen, select the MP server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <p> <input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Export"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </p>
11	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP:</b> Copy Configuration File to MP Server	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the NOAM VIP as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Use the <b>awpushcfg</b> utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the NOAM to the MP server, using the Control network IP address for the MP server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like “TKLCConfigData.&lt;hostname&gt;.sh”.</p> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the management network address from the PMAC.</li> <li>• Username: Use <b>admusr</b></li> <li>• Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the MP server).</li> <li>• Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in <b>step 9</b></li> </ul>
12	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>MP Server:</b> Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Configured Server	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the MP server console by establishing an ssh session from the NOAM VIP terminal console.</p> <pre>\$ ssh admusr@&lt;MP_Control_IP&gt;</pre> <p>Login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> <p>Reboot the server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

		<p>Proceed to the next step once the Server finished rebooting, The server is done rebooting once the login prompt is displayed.</p>
<p>13</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>MP Server:</b> Verify Server Health</p>	<p>After the reboot, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following command as super-user on the server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>
<p>14</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>MP Server:</b> Delete Auto-Configured Default Route on MP and Replace it with a Network Route via the XMI Network-Part1 (Optional)</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> THIS STEP IS <b>OPTIONAL</b> AND SHOULD ONLY BE EXECUTED IF YOU PLAN TO CONFIGURE A <b>DEFAULT ROUTE</b> ON YOUR MP THAT USES A SIGNALING (XSI) NETWORK INSTEAD OF THE XMI NETWORK.</p> <p>(Not executing this step will mean that a default route will not be configurable on this MP and you will have to create separate network routes for each signaling network destination.)</p> <p>Using the iLO facility, log into the MP as the <i>admusr</i> user. (<i>Alternatively, you can log into the site's PMAC then SSH to the MP's control address.</i>)</p> <p>Determine &lt;XMI_Gateway_IP&gt; from your SO site network element info.</p> <p>Gather the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt;NO_XMI_Network_Address&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;NO_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;DR_NO_XMI_Network_Addres&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;DR_NO_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Address&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You can either consult the XML files you imported earlier, or go to the NO GUI and view these values from the <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network Elements</b> screen.</p>  <p>Proceed to the next step to modify the default routes on the MP servers.</p>

**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

15 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>MP Server:</b> Delete Auto-Configured Default Route on MP and Replace it with a Network Route via the XMI Network-Part2 (Optional)	<p>After gathering the network information from step 15, proceed with modifying the default routes on the MP server.</p> <p>Establish a connection to the MP server, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Create network routes to the NO's XMI(OAM) network:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If your NOAM XMI network is exactly the same as your MP XMI network, then you should skip this command and only configure the DR NO route.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;NO_Site_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO_Site_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt;</pre> <p>Create network routes to the DR NO's XMI(OAM) network:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;DR-NO_Site_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;&lt;DR-NO_Site_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt;</pre> <p>Create network routes to the Management Server TVOE XMI(OAM) network for NTP:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Network_Address&gt; --netmask=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt;</pre> <p><b>(Optional)</b> If Sending SNMP traps from individual servers, create host routes to customer SNMP trap destinations on the XMI network:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=host --address=&lt;Customer_NMS_IP&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt;</pre> <p>(Repeat for any existing customer NMS stations)</p> <p><b>Delete the existing default route:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Login to the PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI</li> <li>2. Navigate to <b>Configuration-&gt;Networking-&gt;Networks</b></li> <li>3. Select the specific SO tab.</li> <li>4. Select the XMI network and click 'Unlock'. Click OK to confirm</li> <li>5. Go to <b>Configuration-&gt;Networking-&gt;Routes</b></li> <li>6. Select the Specific MP XMI route and click 'Delete'.</li> <li>7. Click OK to confirm.</li> <li>8. Repeat the above steps for all required MPs to delete the XMI routes</li> <li>9. Select <b>Configuration-&gt;Networking-&gt;Networks</b></li> <li>10. Select the respective SOAM tab.</li> <li>11. Select the XMI network and click 'Lock'.</li> </ol>
--------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 20: Configure MP Blade Servers**

		12. Click OK to confirm
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>MP Server:</b> Verify connectivity	<p>After steps 14 and 15 have been executed, verify network connectivity.</p> <p>Establish a connection to the MP server, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Ping active NO XMI IP address to verify connectivity:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ ping &lt;ACTIVE_NO_XMI_IP_Address&gt; PING 10.240.108.6 (10.240.108.6) 56(84) bytes of data. 64 bytes from 10.240.108.6: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.342 ms 64 bytes from 10.240.108.6: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.247 ms</pre> <p><b>(Optional) Ping Customer NMS Station(s):</b></p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ ping &lt;Customer_NMS_IP&gt; PING 172.4.116.8 (172.4.118.8) 56(84) bytes of data. 64 bytes from 172.4.116.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.342 ms 64 bytes from 172.4.116.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.247 ms</pre> <p>If you do not get a response, then verify your network configuration. If you continue to get failures then halt the installation and contact Oracle customer support.</p>
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Repeat for remaining MP at all sites</b>	<b>Repeat</b> this entire procedure for all remaining MP blades (SS7-MP, DA-MP, and IPFE).

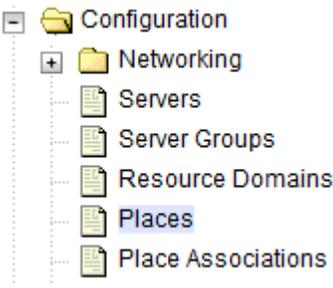
**Procedure 21: Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA/DCA ONLY)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps/reference to add “Places” in the POLICY AND CHARGING DRA Network.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
----------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 21: Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA/DCA ONLY)**

1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>
-------------------------------	----------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 21: Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA/DCA ONLY)**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure Places</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAMP by using the XMI VIP address. Login as user <b>guiadmin</b>.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Places</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button</p>  <p><b>Inserting a new Place</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Place</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Place Name *</td> <td><input type="text" value="ZombiePlace"/></td> <td>Unique identifier used to label a Place. [Default and space.] [A value is required.]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Parent *</td> <td><input type="text" value="NONE"/></td> <td>The Parent of this Place [A value is required.]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Place Type *</td> <td><input type="text" value="Site"/></td> <td>The Type of this Place [A value is required.]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Place Name:</b> &lt;Site Name&gt;  <b>Parent:</b> NONE  <b>Place Type:</b> Site</p> <p>Repeat this step for each of the <i>PCA Places (Sites)</i> in the network.</p> <p>See the 1.4 Terminology section for more information on Sites &amp; Places.</p>	Place			Field	Value	Description	Place Name *	<input type="text" value="ZombiePlace"/>	Unique identifier used to label a Place. [Default and space.] [A value is required.]	Parent *	<input type="text" value="NONE"/>	The Parent of this Place [A value is required.]	Place Type *	<input type="text" value="Site"/>	The Type of this Place [A value is required.]
Place																	
Field	Value	Description															
Place Name *	<input type="text" value="ZombiePlace"/>	Unique identifier used to label a Place. [Default and space.] [A value is required.]															
Parent *	<input type="text" value="NONE"/>	The Parent of this Place [A value is required.]															
Place Type *	<input type="text" value="Site"/>	The Type of this Place [A value is required.]															

**Procedure 21: Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA/DCA ONLY)**

3	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI: Assign MP Servers To Places</b></p>	<p>Select the place configured in step 2, press the edit button.</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </div> <p>For each place you have defined, choose the set of MP servers that will be assigned to those places.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p style="text-align: center; margin: 0;"><b>Editing Place ZombiePlace</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 5px 0;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%; padding: 5px;">Place Type *</td> <td style="width: 40%; padding: 5px;"> <input type="text" value="Site"/> </td> <td style="width: 30%; padding: 5px;">The Ty</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="padding: 5px;"><b>Servers</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">ZombieNOAM</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"> <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieNOAM1  <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieNOAM2                 </td> <td style="padding: 5px;">Availal</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">ZombieDRNOAM</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"> <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieDRNOAM1  <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieDRNOAM2                 </td> <td style="padding: 5px;">Availal</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">ZombieSOAM</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"> <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieSOAM1  <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieSOAM2  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ZombieDAMP1  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ZombieDAMP2                 </td> <td style="padding: 5px;">Availal</td> </tr> </table> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div> </div> <p>Check all the check boxes for <b>PCA DA-MP</b> and <b>SBR</b> servers that will be assigned to this place.</p> <p>Repeat this step for all other DA-MP or SBR servers you wish to assign to places.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> All <b>PCA DA-MPs</b>, <b>SS7MPs</b> and <b>SBR MPs</b> must be added to the <i>Site Place</i> that corresponds to the physical location of the server.</p> <p>See the <b>1.4 Terminology</b> section for more information on <i>Sites</i>.</p>	Place Type *	<input type="text" value="Site"/>	The Ty	<b>Servers</b>			ZombieNOAM	<input type="checkbox"/> ZombieNOAM1 <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieNOAM2	Availal	ZombieDRNOAM	<input type="checkbox"/> ZombieDRNOAM1 <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieDRNOAM2	Availal	ZombieSOAM	<input type="checkbox"/> ZombieSOAM1 <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieSOAM2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ZombieDAMP1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ZombieDAMP2	Availal
Place Type *	<input type="text" value="Site"/>	The Ty															
<b>Servers</b>																	
ZombieNOAM	<input type="checkbox"/> ZombieNOAM1 <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieNOAM2	Availal															
ZombieDRNOAM	<input type="checkbox"/> ZombieDRNOAM1 <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieDRNOAM2	Availal															
ZombieSOAM	<input type="checkbox"/> ZombieSOAM1 <input type="checkbox"/> ZombieSOAM2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ZombieDAMP1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ZombieDAMP2	Availal															

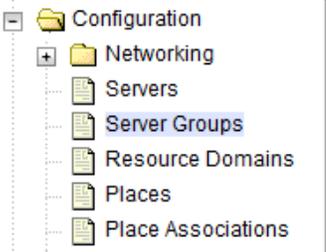
**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure MP Server Groups</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

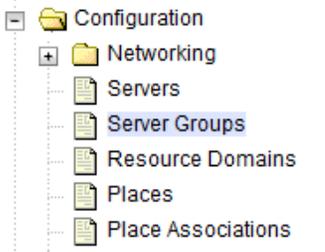
**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

2	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Determine Server Group Function</p>	<p>Determine what server group function will be configured, make note the following configuration decisions.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Server Group Function</th> <th style="width: 35%;">MPs Will Run</th> <th style="width: 35%;">Redundancy Model</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>DSR (multi-active cluster)</b></td> <td>Diameter Relay and Application Services</td> <td>Multiple MPs active Per SG</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>DSR (active-standby pair)</b></td> <td>Diameter Relay and Application Services</td> <td>1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>IP Load Balancer</b></td> <td>IPFE application</td> <td>1 Active MP Per SG</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>SBR</b></td> <td>Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function</td> <td>1 Active MP, 1 Standby MP, 2 Optional Spare Per SG</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>SS7-IWF</b></td> <td>MAP IWF Application</td> <td>1 Active MP Per SG</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>For PCA application:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>Online Charging function (only)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o At least one MP Server Group with the “SBR” function must be configured</li> <li>o At least one MP Server Group with the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” function must be configured</li> <li>o MP Server Groups with the “IP Load Balancer” function (IPFE) are optional.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- <b>Policy DRA function</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o At least two MP Server Groups with the “SBR” function must be configured. One will store Session data and one will store Binding data.</li> <li>o At least one MP Server Group with the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” function must be configured</li> <li>o MP Server Groups with the “IP Load Balancer” function (IPFE) are optional.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>For DCA application:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o At least one MP Server Group with the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” function must be configured.</li> <li>o At least one MP Server Group with the “Session Binding Repository” function may be configured in case of Session based DCA Application.</li> <li>o <b>Note:</b> If PCA application is already functional, then an existing Policy and Charging SBR for Session SBR may be re-used instead of configuring a new “Session Binding Repository”.</li> </ul> <p><b>WAN Replication Connection Count:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o For non-Policy and Charging SBR Server Groups and “Session Binding Repository” : <b>Default Value</b></li> <li>o For Policy and Charging Server Groups and “Session Binding Repository” SGs: <b>8</b></li> </ul> <p>For the PCA application, the following types of MP Server Groups must be configured:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>DA-MP ( Function: DSR (multi-active cluster))</b></li> <li>- <b>SBR ( Function: SBR</b></li> <li>- <b>IPFE ( Function: IP Load Balancer) – Optional)</b></li> <li>-</li> </ul> <p>For the DCA application, the following types of MP Server Groups must be configured:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>DA-MP ( Function: DSR (multi-active cluster))</b></li> <li>- SBR (Function: <b>Session Binding Repository</b>) = Optional for Session less Apps “OR” SBR (Function: <b>SBR</b> assigned to Session Resource Domain.</li> <li>- IPFE ( Function: <b>IP Load Balancer</b>) – Optional)</li> </ul>	Server Group Function	MPs Will Run	Redundancy Model	<b>DSR (multi-active cluster)</b>	Diameter Relay and Application Services	Multiple MPs active Per SG	<b>DSR (active-standby pair)</b>	Diameter Relay and Application Services	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG	<b>IP Load Balancer</b>	IPFE application	1 Active MP Per SG	<b>SBR</b>	Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function	1 Active MP, 1 Standby MP, 2 Optional Spare Per SG	<b>SS7-IWF</b>	MAP IWF Application	1 Active MP Per SG
Server Group Function	MPs Will Run	Redundancy Model																		
<b>DSR (multi-active cluster)</b>	Diameter Relay and Application Services	Multiple MPs active Per SG																		
<b>DSR (active-standby pair)</b>	Diameter Relay and Application Services	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG																		
<b>IP Load Balancer</b>	IPFE application	1 Active MP Per SG																		
<b>SBR</b>	Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function	1 Active MP, 1 Standby MP, 2 Optional Spare Per SG																		
<b>SS7-IWF</b>	MAP IWF Application	1 Active MP Per SG																		

**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Enter MP Server Group Data</p>	<p>From the data collected from step 2, create the server group with the following:</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt;Configuration -&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Insert</b></p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Fill out the following fields:</p> <p><b>Server Group Name:</b> &lt;Server Group Name&gt;  <b>Level:</b> C  <b>Parent:</b> [SOAMP Server Group That is Parent To this MP]  <b>Function:</b> Select the Proper Function for this MP Server Group (Gathered in Step 2)</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in.</p>
<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Repeat For Additional Server Groups</p>	<p>Repeat Steps 2-3 for any remaining MP server groups you wish to create.</p> <p>For instance, if you are installing IPFE, you will need to create an IP Load Balancer server group.</p>

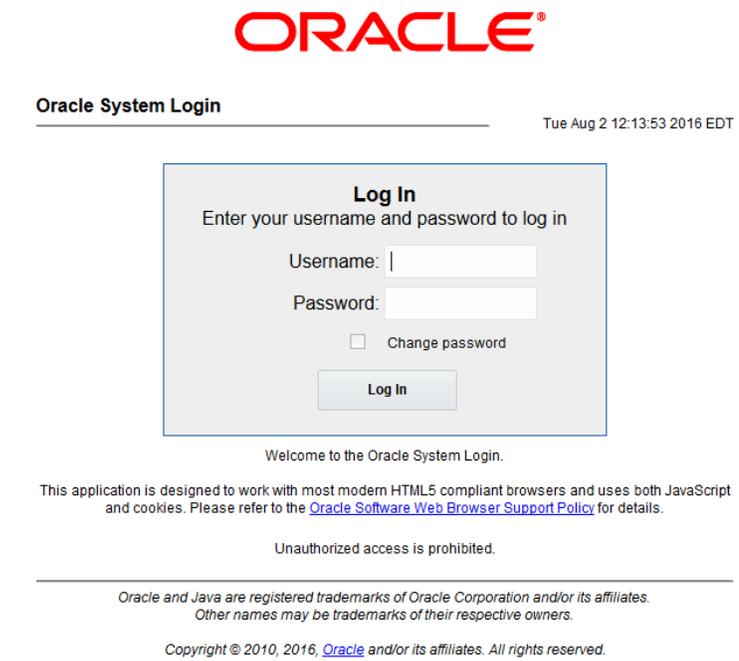
**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

5	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> <b>GUI:</b> Edit the MP Server Groups to include MP blades.</p>	<p>From the GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select a server group that you just created and then select <b>Edit</b>.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin-right: 5px;">Insert</span> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin-right: 5px;">Edit</span> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; margin-right: 5px;">Delete</span> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">Report</span> </div> <p>Select the Network Element that represents the MP server group you wish to edit.</p> <p>Click the <b>Include in SG</b> box for every MP server that you wish to include in <i>this</i> server group. Leave other checkboxes blank.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Server</th> <th style="text-align: left;">SG Inclusion</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Preferred HA Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieDAMP1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieDAMP2</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> Each IPFE and SS7MP server should be in its own server group.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b>.</p>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	ZombieDAMP1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare	ZombieDAMP2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role									
ZombieDAMP1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare									
ZombieDAMP2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare									

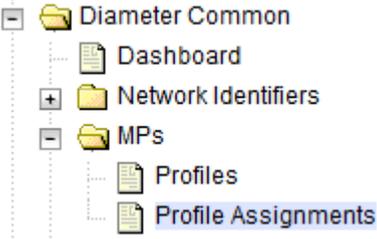
**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

<p>6 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> [PCA/DCA ONLY] Edit the MP Server Group and add Preferred Spares for Site Redundancy (Optional)</p>	<p>If Two Site Redundancy for the Policy and Charging SBR Server Group/ Session Binding Repository SBR Server Group is wanted, add a MP server that is physically located in a separate site (<i>location</i>) to the Server Group by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox and also check the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkbox.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server</th> <th>SG Inclusion</th> <th>Preferred HA Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSBRsp</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If Three Site Redundancy for the SBR MP Server Group is wanted, add two SBR MP servers that are both physically located in separate sites (<i>location</i>) to the Server Group by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox and also check the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkbox for both servers.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Preferred Spare</b> servers should be different sites from the original server and should not be in the same site. There should be servers from three separate sites (<i>locations</i>).</p> <p>For more information about Site Redundancy for Policy and Charging SBR/ Session Binding Repository Server Groups, see the <b>1.4 Terminology</b> section.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b> to save</p>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	ZombieSBRsp	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role						
ZombieSBRsp	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare						
<p>7 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Repeat For Additional Server Groups</p>	<p>Repeat <b>Steps 5- 6</b> for any remaining MP server groups you need to edit.</p>						
<p>8 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear</p>	<p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Alarms &amp; Events-&gt;View Active</b></p> 						

**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

9 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>SOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code>http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></div> <p>Login to the SOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"><p><b>ORACLE®</b></p><p>Oracle System Login <span style="float: right;">Tue Aug 2 12:13:53 2016 EDT</span></p><div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"><p><b>Log In</b> Enter your username and password to log in</p><p>Username: <input type="text"/></p><p>Password: <input type="password"/></p><p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p><p><input type="button" value="Log In"/></p></div><p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p><p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p><p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p><hr/><p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p><p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p></div>
-------------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

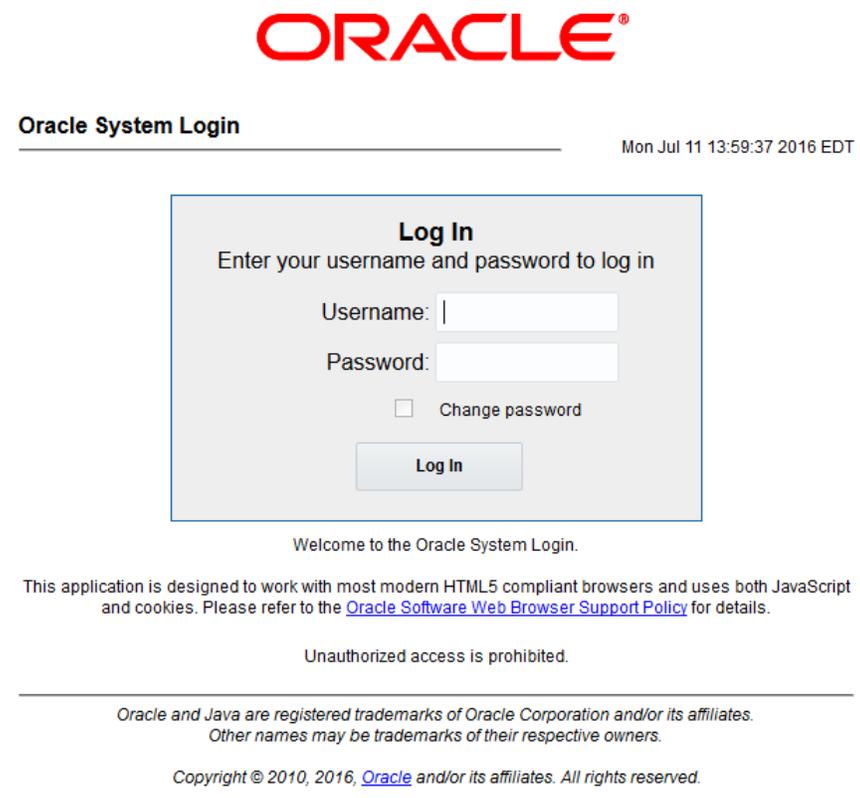
**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

10	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Assign Profiles to DA-MPs from SOAM GUI.</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Diameter Common -&gt;MPs -&gt; Profile Assignments</b></p>  <p>Refer to the <b>DA-MP</b> section. (If the site has both DSR and MAP-IWF server groups, you will see both a DA-MP section and an SS7-MP section)</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">DA-MP</th> <th style="width: 70%;">MP Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">ZombieDAMP1</td> <td style="text-align: center;">G8/G9:Relay <span style="float: right;">▼</span></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">ZombieDAMP2</td> <td style="text-align: center;">G8/G9:Relay <span style="float: right;">▼</span></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For each MP, select the proper profile assignment based on the MP's hardware type and the function it will serve:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Profile Name</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>G8/G9:Relay</b></td> <td>G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>G8/G9:Database</b></td> <td>G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>G8/G9:Session</b></td> <td>G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>Gen9V2:Relay</b></td> <td>Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>Gen9V2:Database</b></td> <td>Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>Gen9V2:Session</b></td> <td>Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> If the DA-MPs at this site are configured for <i>Active/Standby</i> then there will be a single selection box visible that assigns profiles for all MPs.</p> <p>When finished, press the <b>Assign</b> button</p>	DA-MP	MP Profile	ZombieDAMP1	G8/G9:Relay <span style="float: right;">▼</span>	ZombieDAMP2	G8/G9:Relay <span style="float: right;">▼</span>	Profile Name	Description	<b>G8/G9:Relay</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application	<b>G8/G9:Database</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)	<b>G8/G9:Session</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)	<b>Gen9V2:Relay</b>	Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application	<b>Gen9V2:Database</b>	Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)	<b>Gen9V2:Session</b>	Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)
DA-MP	MP Profile																					
ZombieDAMP1	G8/G9:Relay <span style="float: right;">▼</span>																					
ZombieDAMP2	G8/G9:Relay <span style="float: right;">▼</span>																					
Profile Name	Description																					
<b>G8/G9:Relay</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application																					
<b>G8/G9:Database</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)																					
<b>G8/G9:Session</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)																					
<b>Gen9V2:Relay</b>	Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application																					
<b>Gen9V2:Database</b>	Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)																					
<b>Gen9V2:Session</b>	Gen9V2 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)																					

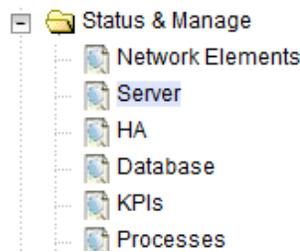
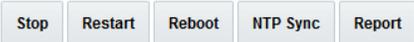
**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

11	<p><b>SOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Assign Profiles to SS7-MPs.</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Diameter-&gt;Configuration-&gt;MPs-&gt;Profiles Assignments</b></p>  <p>Refer to the <b>SS7-MP</b> section. (If the site has both DSR and MAP-IWF server groups, you will see both a DA-MP section and an SS7-MP section)</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">SS7-MP</th> <th style="width: 70%;">MP Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSS7MP1</td> <td>G8/G9:MD-IWF ▼</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSS7MP2</td> <td>G8/G9:MD-IWF ▼</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For each SS7 MP, select the proper profile assignment based on the SS7 MP's hardware type and the function it will serve:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Profile Name</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>G8/G9:MD-IWF</b></td> <td>HP BL460 Gen8/9 Running MAP-IWF functions</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When finished, press the <b>Assign</b> button</p>	SS7-MP	MP Profile	ZombieSS7MP1	G8/G9:MD-IWF ▼	ZombieSS7MP2	G8/G9:MD-IWF ▼	Profile Name	Description	<b>G8/G9:MD-IWF</b>	HP BL460 Gen8/9 Running MAP-IWF functions
SS7-MP	MP Profile											
ZombieSS7MP1	G8/G9:MD-IWF ▼											
ZombieSS7MP2	G8/G9:MD-IWF ▼											
Profile Name	Description											
<b>G8/G9:MD-IWF</b>	HP BL460 Gen8/9 Running MAP-IWF functions											

**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

12 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <input type="text" value="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;"/></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"></div>
--------------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

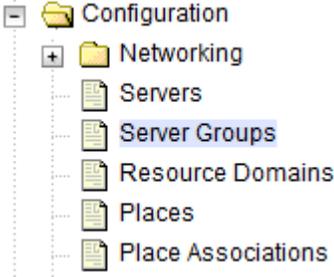
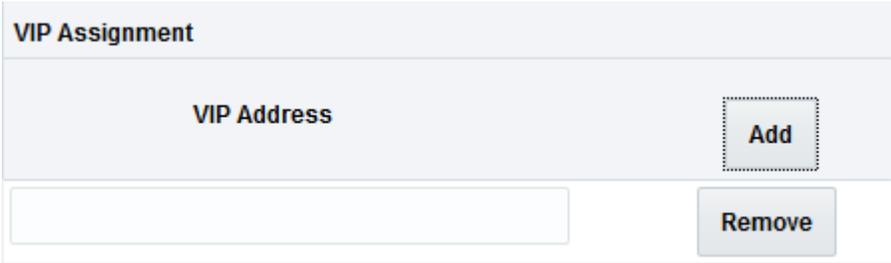
**Procedure 22: Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)**

13 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Restart MP blade servers	<p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server</b></p>  <p>For each MP server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the MP server.</li> <li>• Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</li> <li>• Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup. Wait for the message which tells you that the restart was successful.</li> </ul>  <p><b>Note:</b> POLICY AND CHARGING DRA INSTALLATIONS/DCA INSTALLATIONS: You may continue to see alarms related to ComAgent until you complete PCA/DCA installation</p>
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP:</b> Clear DA_MP_Leader Alarm	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Active/Standby DA-MP Configurations Only</b></p> <p>If DSR (Active/Standby pair) server group function was configured for the DA-MPs, execute this step.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo iqt -fClusterID TopologyMapping where "NodeID='&lt;DA-MP Server Hostname&gt;'"   Server_ID      NodeID ClusterID          7      ZombieDAMP2      C2479</pre> <p>Using the ClusterID above, enter the following:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ echo "&lt;Cluster_ID&gt; DA_MP_Leader Yes"   iload -ha -xun -fcluster -fresource -foptional HaClusterResourceCfg</pre>

**Procedure 23: Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only)**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the VIPs for the signaling networks on the MPs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 20px 0;">  </div>

**Procedure 23: Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only)**

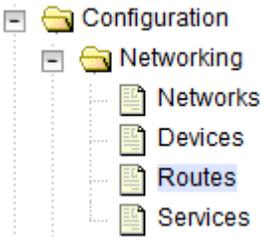
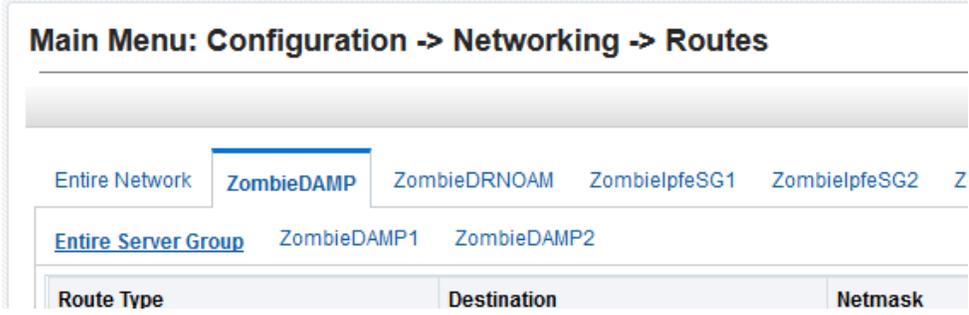
<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Edit the MP Server Group and add VIPs          (ONLY FOR 1+1)</p>	<p><b>IF YOUR MPs ARE IN A DSR MULTI-ACTIVE CLUSTER SERVER GROUP CONFIGURATION (N+0), THEN SKIP THIS STEP</b></p> <p>From <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select the MP server group, and then select <b>Edit</b></p>  <p>Click on <b>Add</b> to add the VIP for XSI1          Enter the VIP of int-XSI-1 and click on <b>Apply</b></p> <p>Click on <b>Add</b> again to add the VIP for XSI2          Enter the VIP of int-XSI-2 and click on <b>Apply</b></p> <p>If more Signaling networks exist, add their corresponding VIP addresses.</p> <p>Finally Click on <b>OK</b>.</p> 
------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 4.4.2 Configure Signaling Devices

#### Procedure 24: Configure the Signaling Network Routes

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure Signaling Network Routes on MP-type servers (DA-MP, IPFE,SS7-MP, etc.)</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">             http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;         </div></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

**Procedure 24: Configure the Signaling Network Routes**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Navigate to Routes Configuration Screen</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Routes</b></p>  <p>Select the MP Server group tab on the top row, then verify the <b>Entire Server Group</b> link is selected, if not, select the link.</p> 
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Add Route</p>	<p>Click on <b>Insert</b> at the bottom of the screen to add additional routes.</p> 

**Procedure 24: Configure the Signaling Network Routes**

4	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Add Default Route for MPs Going Through Signaling Network Gateway (Optional)</p>	<p><b>OPTIONAL</b> - Only execute this step if you performed <b>Procedure 20: Step 15:</b> which removed the XMI gateway default route on MPs</p> <p>If your MP servers no longer have a default route, then you can now insert a default route here which uses one of the signaling network gateways.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Insert Route on DAMP_SG</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 20%;">Field</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Value</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Descript</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Route Type *</td> <td> <input type="radio"/> Net  <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default  <input type="radio"/> Host                 </td> <td>Select a r</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Device *</td> <td>bond0.5 <input type="button" value="v"/></td> <td>Select th</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Destination</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td>The dest</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Netmask</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td>A valid ne</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gateway IP *</td> <td><input style="border: 2px solid red;" type="text"/></td> <td>The IP ac</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p> <p><b>Route Type:</b> <b>Default</b></p> <p><b>Device:</b> <b>Select the signaling device that is directly attached to the network where the XSI default gateway resides.</b></p> <p><b>Gateway IP:</b> <b>The XSI gateway you wish to use for default signaling network access.</b></p> <p>Select <b>OK</b></p>	Field	Value	Descript	Route Type *	<input type="radio"/> Net <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host	Select a r	Device *	bond0.5 <input type="button" value="v"/>	Select th	Destination	<input type="text"/>	The dest	Netmask	<input type="text"/>	A valid ne	Gateway IP *	<input style="border: 2px solid red;" type="text"/>	The IP ac
Field	Value	Descript																		
Route Type *	<input type="radio"/> Net <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host	Select a r																		
Device *	bond0.5 <input type="button" value="v"/>	Select th																		
Destination	<input type="text"/>	The dest																		
Netmask	<input type="text"/>	A valid ne																		
Gateway IP *	<input style="border: 2px solid red;" type="text"/>	The IP ac																		

**Procedure 24: Configure the Signaling Network Routes**

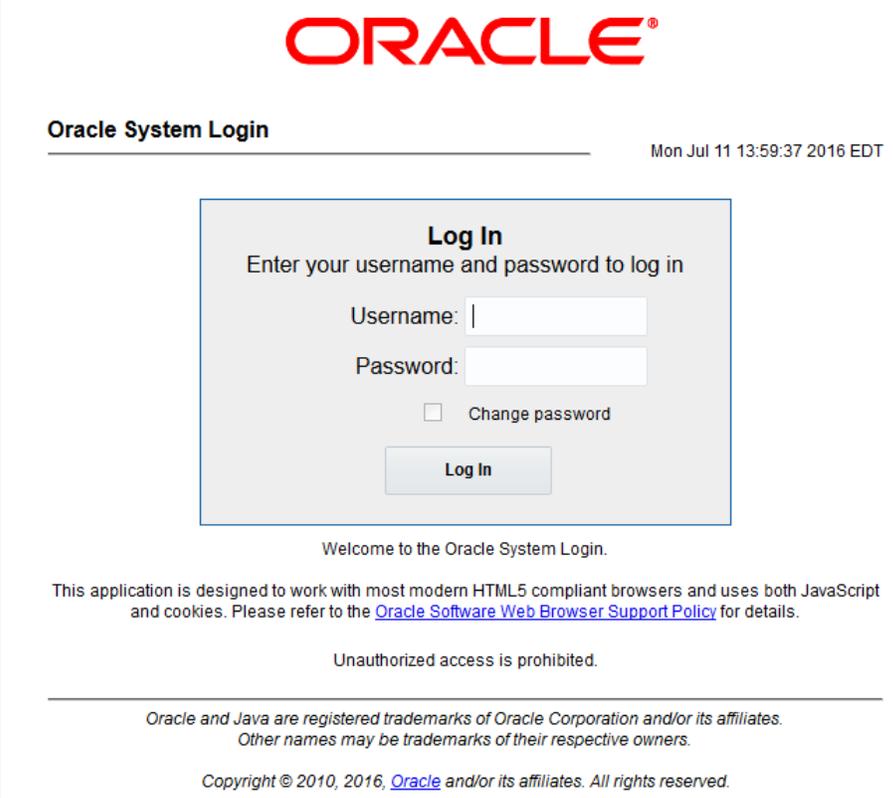
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Add Network Routes for Diameter Peers</b>	<p>Use this step to add IP and/or IPv6 routes to <i>diameter</i> peer destination networks. The goal here is to ensure that diameter traffic uses the gateway(s) on the signaling networks.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px;"> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Route Type *</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Net  <input type="radio"/> Default  <input type="radio"/> Host </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Device *</td> <td> bond0.5 <input type="button" value="v"/> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p><b>Route Type:</b> <a href="#">Net</a>, <a href="#">Default</a>, <a href="#">Host</a></p> <p><b>Device:</b> <a href="#">Select the appropriate signaling interface that will be used to connect to that network</a></p> <p><b>Destination:</b> <a href="#">Enter the Network ID of Network to which the peer node is connected to.</a></p> <p><b>Netmask:</b> <a href="#">Enter the corresponding Netmask (if configuring Net routes)</a></p> <p><b>Gateway IP:</b> <a href="#">Enter the Int-XSI switch VIP of the chosen Network for L3 deployments (either of int-XSI-1 or of int-XSI2). Or the IP of the customer gateway for L2 deployments.</a></p> <p>If you have more routes to enter, Press <b>Apply</b> to save the current route entry and repeat this step to enter more routes</p> <p>If you are finished entering routes, Press <b>OK</b> to save the latest route and leave this screen.</p> <p><b>Layer 3 Configurations Aggregation Switch Configurations Only:</b> Routes should be configured on the aggregation switches so that the destination networks configured in this step are reachable. This can be done by running the following <b>netconfig</b> commands from the site's local PMAC (examples shown -- actual values will vary) :</p> <p>Add routes (IPv4 &amp; IPv6):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px;"> <pre>\$ sudo netConfig --device=switch1A addRoute network=10.10.10.0/24 nexthop=10.50.76.81 \$ sudo netConfig --device=switch1A addRoute network6=2001::/64 nexthop=fd0f::1</pre> </div> <p>Delete routes (IPv4 &amp; IPv6):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px;"> <pre>\$ sudo netConfig --device=switch1A deleteRoute network=10.10.10.0/24 nexthop=10.50.76.81 \$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A deleteRoute network6=2001::/64 nexthop=fd0f::1</pre> </div>	Field	Value	Route Type *	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Net <input type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host	Device *	bond0.5 <input type="button" value="v"/>
Field	Value							
Route Type *	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Net <input type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host							
Device *	bond0.5 <input type="button" value="v"/>							

**Procedure 24: Configure the Signaling Network Routes**

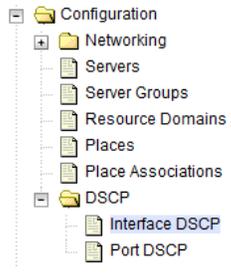
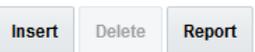
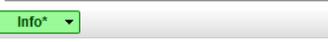
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Local PMAC:</b> Perform a netConfig Backup	<p>After the routes are added to the aggregation switches via netconfig, a <b>netconfig backup</b> should be taken so that the new routes are retained in the backup.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ netConfig backupConfiguration --device=&lt;Switch Hostname service=&lt;ssh_Service&gt; filename=&lt;Backup Filename&gt;</pre> <p>Copy the files to the backup directory:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /bin/mv -i ~&lt;switch_backup_user&gt;/&lt;switch_name&gt;- backup* /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/switch/backup</pre>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Repeat for all other MP server groups.	<p>The routes entered in this procedure should now be configured on all MPs in the server group for the first MP you selected.</p> <p>If you have additional MP server groups, repeat from <b>step 2</b>, but this time, select an MP from the next MP server group.</p> <p>Continue until you have covered all MP server groups. This includes DAMP, IPFE, and SS7MP servers.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> IPFE and DAMP servers must have the same routes configured.</p>

### 4.4.3 Configure DSCP (Optional)

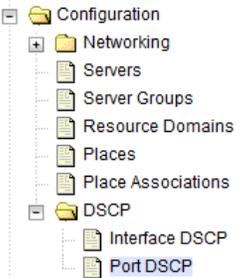
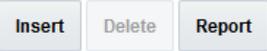
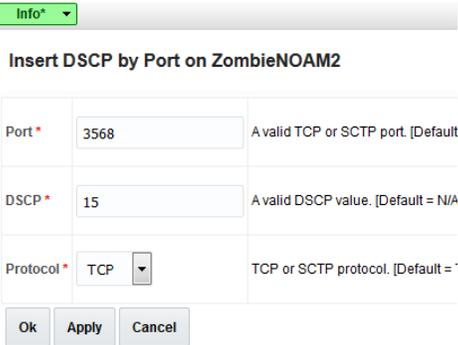
#### Procedure 25: Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the DSCP values for outgoing packets on servers. DSCP values can be applied to an outbound interface as a whole, or to all outbound traffic using a specific TCP or SCTP source port. This step is optional and should only be executed if has been decided that your network will utilize packet DSCP markings for Quality-of-Service purposes.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If your enclosure switches already have DSCP configuration for the signaling VLANs, then the switch configuration will override the settings in this procedure. It is strongly recommended, however, that you configure DSCP here at the application level where you have the most knowledge about outgoing traffic patterns and qualities.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <input type="text" value="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;"/></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 

**Procedure 25: Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Option 1:          Configure          Interface          DSCP</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> The values displayed in the screenshots are for demonstration purposes only. The exact DSCP values for your site will vary.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Interface DSCP</b></p>  <p>Select the server you wish to configure from the list of servers on the 2<sup>nd</sup> line. (You can view all servers with <b>Entire Network</b> selected; or limit yourself to a particular server group by clicking on that server group name's tab).</p> <p>Click <b>Insert</b></p>  <p>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Interface DSCP</p>  <p>Select the network interface from the drop down box. Enter the <i>DSCP value</i> you wish to have applied to packets leaving this interface and select the transport protocol.</p> <p>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; DSC</p>  <p><b>Insert DSCP by Interface on Zombiel</b></p>  <p>Click <b>OK</b> if there are no more interfaces on this server to configure, or <b>Apply</b> to finish this interface and continue on with more interfaces by selecting them from the drop down and entering their <i>DSCP values</i>.</p>
------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 25: Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic**

3	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Option 2:          Configure Port          DSCP</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> The values displayed in the screenshots are for demonstration purposes only. The exact DSCP values for your site will vary.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Port DSCP</b></p>  <p>Select the server you wish to configure from the list of servers on the 2<sup>nd</sup> line. (You can view all servers with <b>Entire Network</b> selected; or limit yourself to a particular server group by clicking on that server group name's tab).</p> <p>Click <b>Insert</b></p>  <hr/> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Port DSCP</b></p>  <p>Enter the source port, DSCP value, and select the transport protocol.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Port DSCP</b></p>  <p>Click <b>OK</b> if there are no more port DSCPs on this server to configure, or <b>Apply</b> to finish this port entry and continue entering more port <i>DSCP mappings</i>.</p>
---	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 25: Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic**

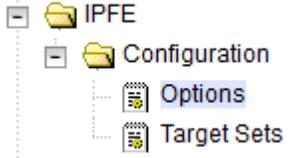
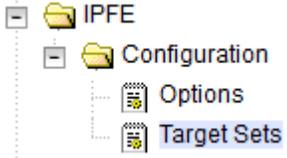
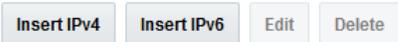
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Repeat for additional servers.	Repeat <b>Steps 2-3</b> for all remaining servers.
-------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

### 4.4.4 Configure IP Front End Servers (Optional)

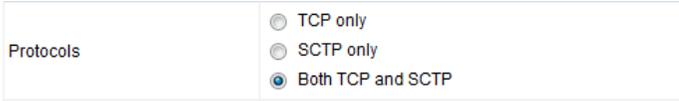
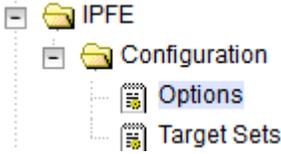
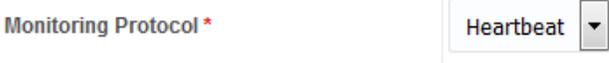
#### Procedure 26: IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure IP Front End (IPFE), and optimize performance.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server the VIP IP address of the SOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> <a href="http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;">http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</a> </div> </p> <p>Login to the SOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

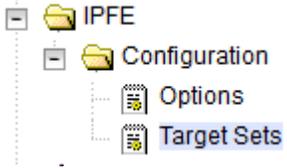
**Procedure 26: IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configuration of replication IPFE association data.</p>	<p>Select <b>Main Menu -&gt; IPFE -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Options</b></p>  <p>Enter the IP address of the 1<sup>st</sup> IPFE in the IPFE-A1 IP Address field and the IP address of the 2<sup>nd</sup> IPFE in the IPFE-A2 IP Address field</p> <p>If applicable, enter the address of the 3<sup>rd</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> IPFE servers in IPFE-B1 IP Address and IPFE-B2 IP Address fields.</p> <p><b>Configuration Options</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Variable</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3"><b>Inter-IPFE Synchronization</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE-A1 IP Address</td> <td>169.254.1.11 - ZombieIPFE1</td> <td>IPv4 or IPv6 This selection</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE-A2 IP Address</td> <td>169.254.1.12 - ZombieIPFE2</td> <td>IPv4 or IPv6 This selection</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> It is recommended that the address reside on the IMI (Internal Management Interface) network.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> IPFE-A1 and IPFE-A2 must have connectivity between each other via these addresses. The same applies with IPFE-B1 and IPFE-B2.</p> <p>Click <b>Ok</b></p>	Variable	Value	Description	<b>Inter-IPFE Synchronization</b>			IPFE-A1 IP Address	169.254.1.11 - ZombieIPFE1	IPv4 or IPv6 This selection	IPFE-A2 IP Address	169.254.1.12 - ZombieIPFE2	IPv4 or IPv6 This selection
Variable	Value	Description												
<b>Inter-IPFE Synchronization</b>														
IPFE-A1 IP Address	169.254.1.11 - ZombieIPFE1	IPv4 or IPv6 This selection												
IPFE-A2 IP Address	169.254.1.12 - ZombieIPFE2	IPv4 or IPv6 This selection												
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 1 (Insert Target Set)</p>	<p>Select <b>Main Menu -&gt; IPFE -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Target Sets</b></p>  <p>Select either <b>Insert IPv4</b> or <b>Insert IPv6</b> button, depending on the IP version of the target set you plan to use.</p> 												

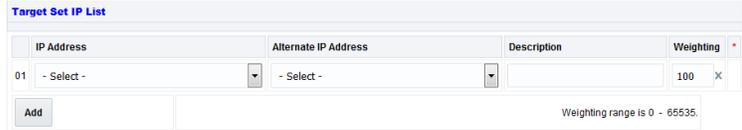
**Procedure 26: IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration**

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 2 (Target Set Configuration)</p>	<p>Continued from the previous step, the following are configurable:</p> <p><b>Protocols:</b> protocols the target set will support.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Delete Age:</b> Specifies when the IPFE should remove its association data for a connection. Any packets presenting a source IP address/port combination that had been previously stored as association state but have been idle longer than the <b>Delete Age</b> configuration will be treated as a new connection and will not automatically go to the same application server.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Load Balance Algorithm:</b> <i>Hash</i> or <i>Least Load</i> options</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Note:</b> In order for the IPFE to provide Least Load distribution, <b>Main Menu -&gt; IPFE -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Options</b>, Monitoring Protocol must be set to <b>Heartbeat</b> so that the application servers can provide the load information the IPFE uses to select the <b>least-loaded</b> server for connections.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Monitoring Protocol:</b></p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Note:</b> The Least Load option is the default setting, and is the recommended option with exception of unique backward compatibility scenarios.</p> <p>Execute the following command if Hash Load Balance Algorithm was selected above. (advise cut and paste to prevent errors):</p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the SOAM VIP, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <div> <pre>\$ sudo iset -fvalue="50" DpiOption where "name='MpEngIngressMpsPercentile'" === changed 1 records ===</pre> </div>
------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 26: IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration**

<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 3 (Target Set Configuration)</p>	<p>(From <b>Main Menu -&gt; IPFE -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Target Sets</b>)</p>  <p><b>(Optional):</b> If you have selected the <b>Least Load algorithm</b>, you may configure the following fields to adjust the algorithm's behavior:</p> <p><b>MPS Factor</b> – Messages per Second (MPS) is one component of the least load algorithm. This field allows you to set it from 0 (not used in load calculations) to 100 (the only component used for load calculations). It is recommended that IPFE connections have Reserved Ingress MPS set to something other than the default, which is 0.</p> <p><input type="text" value="50"/></p> <hr/> <p><input type="text" value="50"/></p> <p>To configure <b>Reserved Ingress MPS</b>, go to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Diameter -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Configuration Sets -&gt; Capacity Configuration Sets</b>. If you choose not to use <b>Reserved Ingress MPS</b>, set <b>MPS Factor</b> to 0 and <b>Connection Count Factor</b>, described below, to 100.</p> <p><b>Connection Count Factor</b> – This is the other component of the <b>least load</b> algorithm. This field allows you to set it from 0 (not used in load calculations) to 100 (the only component used for load calculations). Increase this setting if connection storms (the arrival of many connections at a very rapid rate) are a concern.</p> <p><b>Allowed Deviation</b> - Percentage within which two application server's load calculation results are considered to be equal. If very short, intense connection bursts are expected to occur, increase the value to smooth out the distribution.</p> <p><input type="text" value="5"/></p>
------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 26: IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration**

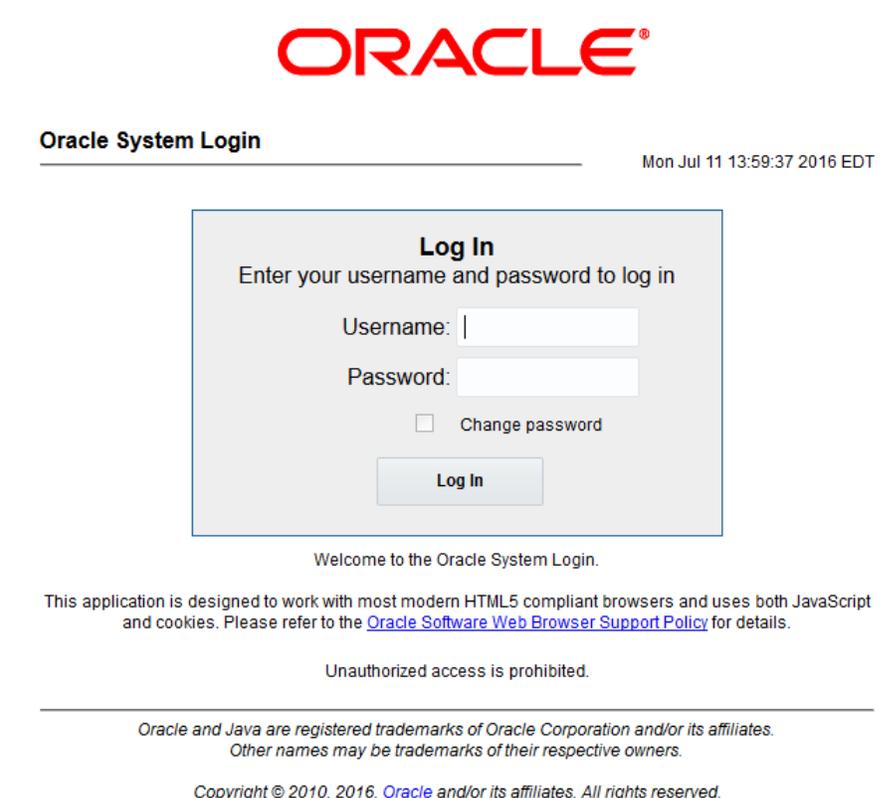
6	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 4 (Target Set Configuration)</p>	<p><b>Primary Public IP Address:</b> IP address for the target set</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> This address must reside on the XSI (External Signaling Interface) network because it will be used by the application clients to reach the application servers. This address <b>MUST NOT</b> be a real interface address (that is, must not be associated with a network interface card).</p> <p>Active IPFE: IPFE to handle the traffic for the target set address.</p> <p><b>Secondary Public IP Address:</b> If this target set supports either multi-homed SCTP or Both TCP and SCTP, provide a Secondary IP Address.</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> A secondary address is required to support SCTP multi-homing. A secondary address can support TCP, but the TCP connections will not be multi-homed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If SCTP multi-homing is to be supported, select the mate IPFE of the Active IPFE for the Active IPFE for secondary address to ensure that SCTP failover functions as designed.</p> <p><b>Target Set IP List:</b> Select an IP address, a secondary IP address if supporting SCTP multi-homing, a description, and a weight for the application server.</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> The IP address must be on the XSI network since they must be on the same network as the target set address. This address must also match the IP version of the target set address (IPv4 or IPv6). If the Secondary Public IP Address is configured, it must reside on the same application server as the first IP address.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If all application servers have an equal weight (e.g., 100, which is the default), they have an equal chance of being selected. Application servers with larger weights have a greater chance of being selected.</p> <p>Click the <b>Add</b> button to add more application servers (Up to 16)</p> <p>Click the <b>Apply</b> button.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 26: IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration**

7 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>SOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Repeat for additional Configuration of IPFE Target sets.	Repeat for <b>steps 3-6</b> for each target set (Up to 16). At least one target set must be configured.
-------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## 4.5 SNMP Configuration

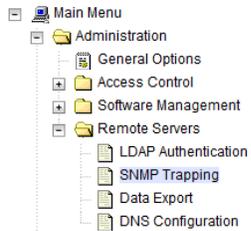
### Procedure 27: Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s)

<p><b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure forwarding of SNMP Traps from each individual server.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If SNMP configuration is not required, skip to step 6.</b></p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

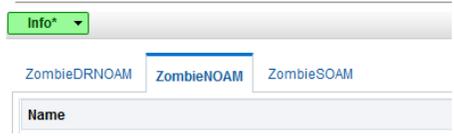
**Procedure 27: Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s)**

2  
 **NOAM VIP GUI:**  
 Configure System-Wide SNMP Trap Receiver(s)

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Administration -> Remote Servers -> SNMP Trapping**

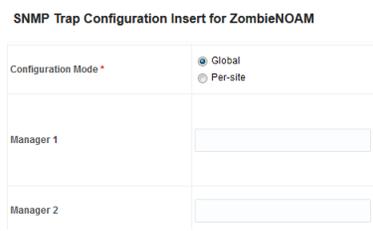


Select the Server Group tab for SNMP trap configuration:  
**Main Menu: Administration -> Remote Servers**

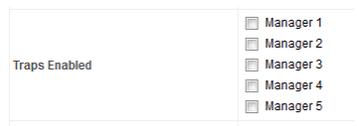


Fill in the IP address or hostname of the Network Management Station (NMS) you wish to forward traps to. This IP should be reachable from the NOAMP's "XMI" network.

Continue to fill in additional secondary, tertiary, etc. Manager IPs in the corresponding slots if desired.



Check Traps Enabled boxes for the Manager servers being configured:



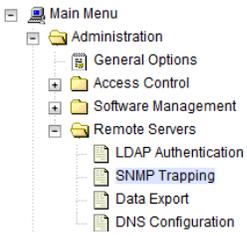
Enter the **SNMP Community Name:**



Leave all other fields at their default values.

Press **OK**

**Procedure 27: Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s)**

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAMP</b>  <b>VIP:</b> Enable Traps from Individual Servers (Optional)</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> By default SNMP traps from MPs are aggregated and then displayed at the active NOAMP. If instead, you wish for every server to send its own traps directly to the NMS, then execute this procedure.</p> <p>This procedure requires that all servers, including MPs, have an XMI interface on which the customer SNMP Target server (NMS) is reachable.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Remote Servers -&gt; SNMP Trapping</b></p>  <p>Make sure the checkbox next to <b>Enabled</b> is checked, if not, check it as shown below</p> <p>Traps from Individual Servers <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled</p> <p>Then click on <b>Apply</b> and verify that the data is committed.</p>
------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

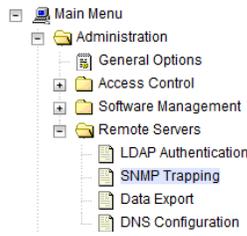
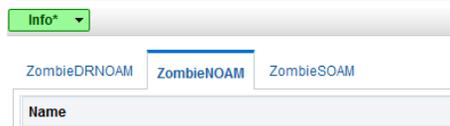
**Procedure 27: Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s)**

4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code>http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</code></div> <p>Login as <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"><p>The screenshot shows the Oracle System Login page. At the top is the Oracle logo in red. Below it is the text 'Oracle System Login' and a timestamp 'Tue Jun 7 13:49:06 2016 EDT'. A central box contains a 'Log In' form with fields for 'Username:' and 'Password:', a 'Change password' checkbox, and a 'Log In' button. At the bottom, there is a disclaimer: 'Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 9.0, 10.0, or 11.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.' followed by trademark information and a copyright notice: 'Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.'</p></div>
-------------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 27: Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s)**

5	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Update the TVOE Host SNMP Community String</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Credentials -&gt; SNMP Community String Update</b></p> <p>Check the box Use Site Specific Read/Write Community String</p> <hr/> <p>Select <b>Read Only</b> or <b>Read/Write</b> Community String:  <input type="radio"/> Read Only <input checked="" type="radio"/> Read/Write</p> <p>Check this box if updating servers using the <b>Site Specific</b> SNMP Community String:  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use Site Specific <b>Read/Write</b> Community String</p> <p>Community String: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Note: The Community String value can be 1 to 31 uppercase, lowercase, or numeric characters.</p> <hr/> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Update Servers</b></p> <p>Click <b>Update Servers</b></p> <p>Select <b>Ok</b> to the following prompt:</p> <p><small>You are about to update the Read/Write SNMP Credentials on all known supporting TVOE servers and the PM&amp;C guest on the control network of this PM&amp;C. Changing of SNMP Community Strings is only supported across product release versions that support this functionality and attempting to do so with product versions not supporting it may cause the system to become inoperable.</small></p> <p><small>Are you sure you want to continue?</small></p> <div style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div>
---	------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

6	<p><b>(Workaround)</b> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p><b>NOTE:</b> This workaround step should be performed only in the following cases:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) If SNMP is not configured (i.e, if above steps 1-6 are skipped)</li> <li>2) If SNMP is already configured and <b>SNMPv3</b> is selected as enabled version</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> This is a workaround step to configure SNMP with 'SNMPv2c and SNMPv3' as the enabled versions for SNMP Traps configuration, as PMAC does not support SNMPv3.</p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

		<p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <input type="text" value="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;"/></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 
<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b>          Configure System-Wide SNMP Trap Receiver(s)</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Remote Servers -&gt; SNMP Trapping</b></p>  <p>Select the Server Group tab for SNMP trap configuration:  <b>Main Menu: Administration -&gt; Remote Servers</b></p> 

Fill in the IP address or hostname of the Network Management Station (NMS) you wish to forward traps to. This IP should be reachable from the NOAMP's "XMI" network. (If already configured SNMP with **SNMPv3** as enabled version, another server needs to be configured here)

Continue to fill in additional secondary, tertiary, etc. Manager IPs in the corresponding slots if desired.

**SNMP Trap Configuration Insert for ZombieNOAM**

Configuration Mode \*  Global  Per-site

Manager 1

Manager 2

Set the Enabled Versions as **SNMPv2c and SNMPv3**:

**Enabled Versions** SNMPv2c and SNMPv3 ▼

Check Traps Enabled boxes for the Manager servers being configured:

Traps Enabled  Manager 1  Manager 2  Manager 3  Manager 4  Manager 5

Enter the **SNMP Community Name**:

SNMPv2c Read-Only Community Name

SNMPv2c Read-Write Community Name

Leave all other fields at their default values.

Press **OK**

<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><a href="http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;">http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</a></p> </div> <p>Login as <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 20px 0;">  </div> <p><b>Oracle System Login</b> <span style="float: right;">Tue Jun 7 13:49:06 2016 EDT</span></p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: 80%;"> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Log In</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Username: <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Password: <input style="width: 100%;" type="password"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="Log In"/></p> </div> <p style="font-size: small; text-align: center;">Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 9.0, 10.0, or 11.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <hr/> <p style="font-size: x-small; text-align: center;"><i>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</i></p> <p style="font-size: x-small; text-align: center;">Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p>
------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

<p>9 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Update the TVOE Host SNMP Community String</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Credentials -&gt; SNMP Community String Update</b></p> <p>Check the box Use Site Specific Read/Write Community String</p> <hr/> <p>Select <b>Read Only</b> or <b>Read/Write</b> Community String:  <input type="radio"/> Read Only <input checked="" type="radio"/> Read/Write</p> <p>Check this box if updating servers using the <b>Site Specific</b> SNMP Community String:  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use Site Specific <b>Read/Write</b> Community String</p> <p>Community String: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Note: The Community String value can be 1 to 31 uppercase, lowercase, or numeric characters.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Update Servers</b></p> <p>Click <b>Update Servers</b></p> <p>Select <b>Ok</b> to the following prompt:</p> <p><small>You are about to update the Read/Write SNMP Credentials on all known supporting TVOE servers and the PM&amp;C guest on the control network of this PM&amp;C. Changing of SNMP Community Strings is only supported across product release versions that support this functionality and attempting to do so with product versions not supporting it may cause the system to become inoperable.</small></p> <p><small>Are you sure you want to continue?</small></p> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p>
<p>1 0 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SNMPv3 (Optional)</b></p>	<p>Refer to Appendix O: Restoring SNMP configuration to SNMPv3 (Optional) to restore SNMPv3 after installation, if required</p>

### 4.6 IDIH Installation and Configuration (Optional)

The following procedures outline the steps needed to install and configure IDIH.

**Note:** If their already exists an IDIH, and this is an IDIH re-installation; execute **Appendix J: IDIH External Drive Removal** before proceeding.

### 4.6.1 IDIH Installation

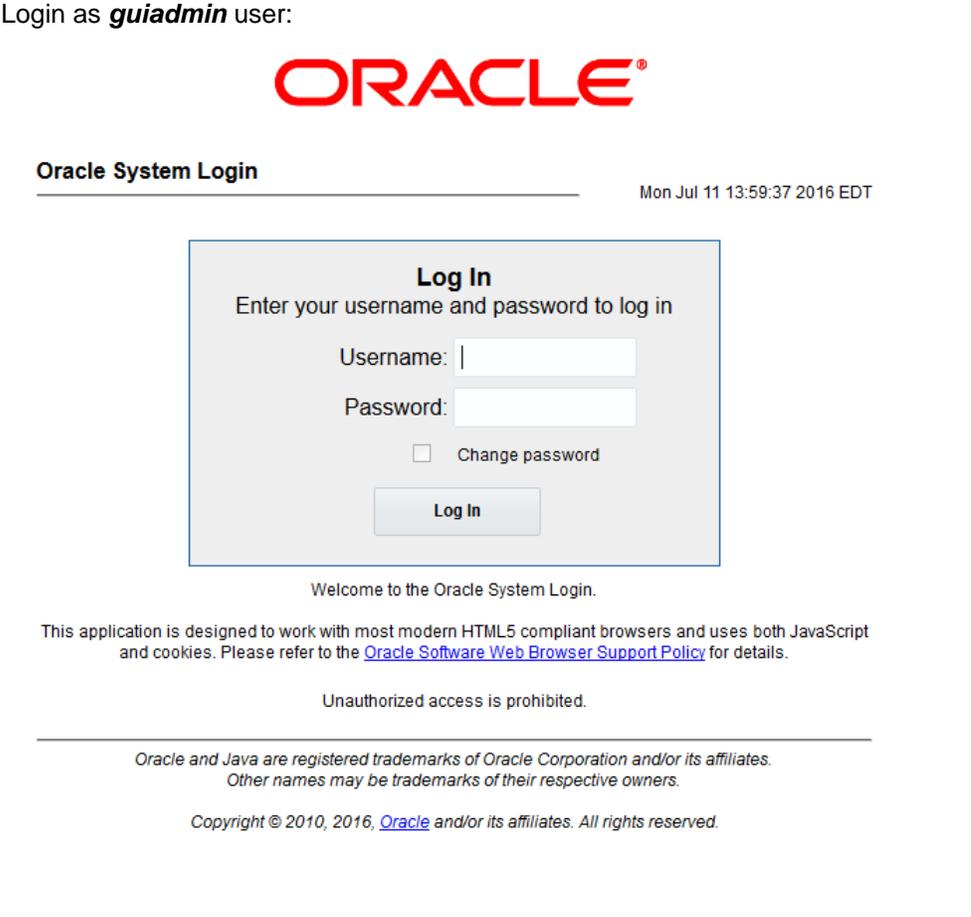
The installation procedure uses the “fast deployment” utility (fdconfig) bundled with the PMAC server to install and configure IDIH.

Note: For installation, oracle

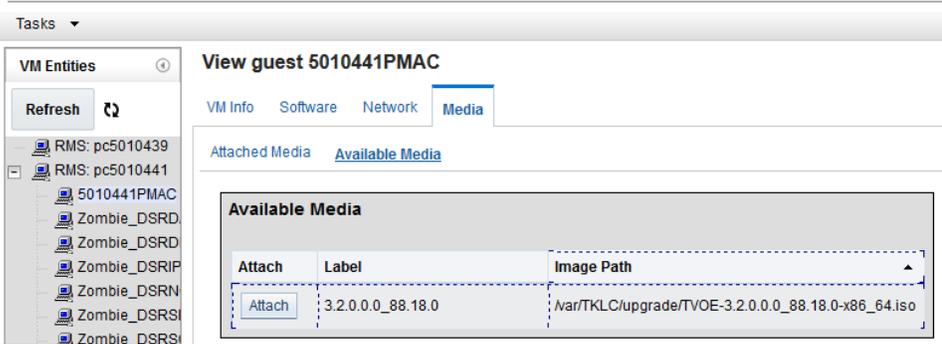
#### Procedure 28: IDIH Configuration

<b>S T E P #</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to install and configure IDIH.	
	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>TVOE Host:</b> Load Application ISO	<p>Add the Application ISO images (<b>mediation, application, and oracleGuest</b>) to the PM&amp;C, this can be done in one of three ways:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insert the Application CD required by the application into the removable media drive.</li> <li>2. Attach the USB device containing the ISO image to a USB port.</li> <li>3. Copy the Application iso file to the PM&amp;C server into the <b>/var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr/</b> directory as pmacftpusr user:</li> </ol> <p>cd into the directory where your ISO image is located on the <b>TVOE Host</b> (<i>not on the PM&amp;C server</i>)</p> <p>Using sftp, connect to the PM&amp;C server</p> <pre>\$ sftp pmacftpusr@&lt;pmac_management_network_ip&gt; \$ put &lt;image&gt;.iso</pre> <p>After the image transfer is 100% complete, close the connection:</p> <pre>\$ quit</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> If there is insufficient disk space with the PMAC repository as pmacftpuser, please follow section “Configure PM&amp;C Application Guest isoimages Virtual Disk” of [12] to increase it.</p>

**Procedure 28: IDIH Configuration**

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code>http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</code></div> <p>Login as <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div><p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p><p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p><p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p><hr/><p><i>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</i></p><p><i>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</i></p></div>
-------------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 28: IDIH Configuration**

<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Attach the software Image to the PMAC Guest</p>	<p>If in Step 1 the ISO image was transferred directly to the PM&amp;C guest via sftp, skip the rest of this step and continue with step 4. If the image is on a CD or USB device, continue with this step.</p> <p>In the PM&amp;C GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b>. In the "<b>VM Entities</b>" list, select the PM&amp;C guest. On the resulting "<b>View VM Guest</b>" page, select the <b>Media</b> tab.</p> <p>Under the <b>Media</b> tab, find the ISO image in the "<b>Available Media</b>" list, and click its <b>Attach</b> button. After a pause, the image will appear in the "<b>Attached Media</b>" list.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: VM Management</b></p> 
<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Add Application Image</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Manage Software Images</b></p> <p>Press <b>Add Image</b> button. Use the drop down to select the image.</p>  <p>If the image was supplied on a CD or a USB drive, it will appear as a virtual device ("<b>device://...</b>"). These devices are assigned in numerical order as CD and USB images become available on the Management Server. The first virtual device is reserved for internal use by TVOE and PMAC; therefore, the iso image of interest is normally present on the second device, "<b>device://dev/sr1</b>". If one or more CD or USB-based images were already present on the Management Server before you started this procedure, choose a correspondingly higher device number.</p> <p>If in Step 1 the image was transferred to PMAC via sftp it will appear in the list as a local file "<b>/var/TKLC/...</b>".</p> <p>Select the appropriate path and Press <b>Add New Image</b> button.</p> <p>You may check the progress using the <b>Task Monitoring</b> link. Observe the green bar indicating success.</p> <p>Once the green bar is displayed, remove the DSR application Media from the optical drive of the management server.</p>
<p>5 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC:</b> Establish Terminal Session</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC. Login as <b>admusr</b>.</p>

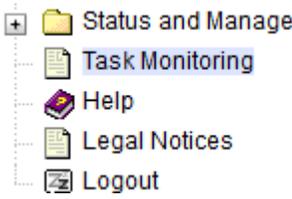
**Procedure 28: IDIH Configuration**

6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC:</b> Reset Create Guest Default Timeout and other timeout parameters	<p>Reset the create guest default timeout.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$ sudo sqlite3 /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/TKLCfd-config/db/fdcRepo.fdcdb 'update params set value=3000 where name="DEFAULT_CREATE_GUEST_TIMEOUT";</pre> <pre>\$ sudo pmacadm setParam --paramName=defaultTpdProvdTimeout -paramValue=120</pre> <pre>\$ sudo pmacadm setParam --paramName=guestDiskDeployTimeout -paramValue=50</pre> <p>To verify whether the above values are set correctly, run the below commands.</p> <pre>\$ sudo sqlite3 /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/TKLCfd-config/db/fdcRepo.fdcdb 'select name, value from params where name like "%TIMEOUT%";</pre> <pre>\$ sudo pmacadm getParam --paramName=defaultTpdProvdTimeout</pre> <pre>\$ sudo pmacadm getParam --paramName=guestDiskDeployTimeout</pre>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC:</b> Copy the fdc.cfg file to the guest-dropin Directory	<p>Copy the fdc.cfg file to the pmac guest-dropin directory.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cp /usr/TKLC/smac/html/TPD/mediation-*/fdc.cfg /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin</pre>
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC:</b> Configure the fdc.cfg file	<p>Configure the fdc.cfg file. See <b>Appendix I: IDIH Fast Deployment Configuration</b> for a breakdown of the parameters.</p> <p>Update the software versions, hostnames, bond interfaces, network addresses, and network VLAN information for the TVOE host and IDIH guests that you are installing.</p>

**Procedure 28: IDIH Configuration**

9 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC:</b> Run the FDC creation script <code>idihFdc.sh</code>	<p>Rename the <code>fdc.cfg</code> file to your preference; also note that two files are generated by the <code>fdc</code> shell script. One is for the Installation procedure and the other file is used for the upgrade procedure. The upgrade FDC is named <code>upgrade</code>.</p> <p>Example: <code>hostname.cfg</code></p> <p>Note: The following hostname for guests has been reserved for internal use. Please try to avoid them:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>oracle</code></li><li>• <code>mediation</code></li><li>• <code>appserver</code></li></ul> <p>Here are the suggested hostname for guests:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>&lt;server hostname&gt;-ora</code> example, <code>thunderbolt-ora</code></li><li>• <code>&lt;server hostname&gt;-med</code> example, <code>thunderbolt-med</code></li><li>• <code>&lt;server hostname&gt;-app</code> example, <code>thunderbolt-app</code></li></ul> <p>Run the FDC creation script <b><code>fdc.sh</code></b>.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$cd /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin/  \$sudo /usr/TKLC/smac/html/TPD/mediation- 8.0.0.0_80.x.x-x86_64/fdc.sh fdc.cfg</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> Verify the values in the xml generated from the <code>fdc.sh</code> script match those of the values entered in <code>fdc.cfg</code>.</p>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 28: IDIH Configuration**

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>TVOE Host:</b> Verify/Remove External Devices	<p>Establish an SSH session to the TVOE Host which will host the IDIH, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>On the TVOE host which will host the IDIH, before IDIH has ever been installed, or, after the external disk removal procedure has been successfully completed:</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ ls /dev/sd*</pre> <p>Verify you only have sda* devices (e.g. sda1, sda2, etc...) Expected output:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ ls /dev/sd* /dev/sda /dev/sda1 /dev/sda2 /dev/sda3</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> If any other devices are listed (e.g. sdb*, sdc*, sdd*, etc...) Stop. You must first remove the extra device(s) in your system (e.g. sdb*, sdc*, sdd*, etc...). Refer to <b>Appendix J: IDIH External Drive Removal</b>. Reboot the tvoe and verify the extra device(s) are still removed (&gt; ls /dev/sd*)</p>
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC:</b> Run the fdconfig.	<p>Run the fdconfig configuration.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ screen  \$sudo fdconfig config --file=hostname_XX-XX-XX.xml</pre> <p>Example: \$sudo fdconfig config --file=tvoe-ferbrms4_01-22-15.xml</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This is a long duration command. If the screen command was run prior to executing the fdconfig, perform a “screen -dr” to resume the screen session in the event of a terminal timeout etc.</p>
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Monitor the Configuration	<p>If not already done so, establish a GUI session on the PMAC server.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b></p>  <p>The screenshot shows a vertical list of menu items: 'Status and Manage' (with a folder icon), 'Task Monitoring' (with a document icon and highlighted in blue), 'Help' (with a question mark icon), 'Legal Notices' (with a document icon), and 'Logout' (with a power icon).</p> <p>Monitor the IDIH configuration to completion.</p>

## 4.6.2 Post IDIH Installation Configuration

The following sections should be executed after IDIH installation is complete.

After an IDIH fresh installation, reference data synchronization is initially disabled. Reference data synchronization requires some initial configuration before it is enabled.

The Trace Ref Data Adapter application must retrieve data from web services hosted by the DSR SOAM web server, and this requires the DSR SOAM virtual IP address (VIP) to be configured.

The DSR SOAM VIP will be unique at each customer site because it is defined based on the customer's network configuration. Therefore, there is no standard default value for the DSR SOAM VIP.

### Procedure 29: Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure DSR reference data synchronization for IDIH</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>IDIH Application Server: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server. Login as user <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Issue the following commands to login as <b>tekelec</b> user.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">\$ sudo su - tekelec</pre>

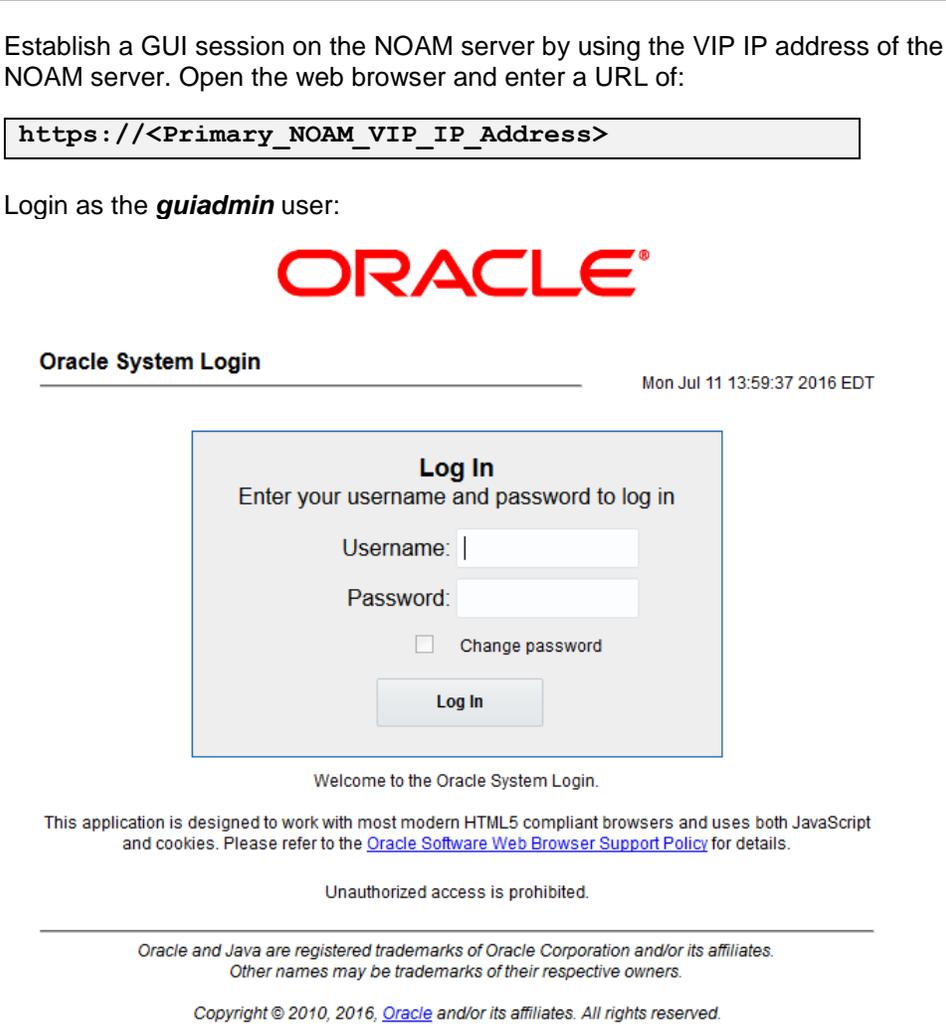
**Procedure 29: Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH Application Server:</b> Execute Configuration Script.</p>	<p>Execute the following script:</p> <pre> \$ apps/trda-config.sh  Example output:  corsair-app:/usr/TKLC/xIH apps/trda-config.sh dos2unix: converting file /usr/TKLC/xIH/boa/user_projects/domains/tekelec/nsp/trace-refdata-ad Please enter DSR oam server IP address: 10.240.39.175  SQL*Plus: Release 12.1.0.2.0 Production on Thu Oct 1 15:04:40 2015  Copyright (c) 1982, 2014, Oracle. All rights reserved.  Last Successful login time: Thu Oct 01 2015 13:27:57 -04:00  Connected to: Oracle Database 12c Enterprise Edition Release 12.1.0.2.0 - 64bit Production With the Partitioning, Automatic Storage Management, OLAP, Advanced Analytics and Real Application Testing options  SQL&gt; SQL&gt; 2 3 4 5 1 row merged.  SQL&gt; Commit complete.  SQL&gt; Disconnected from Oracle Database 12c Enterprise Edition Release 12.1.0.2.0 - 64bit Produ With the Partitioning, Automatic Storage Management, OLAP, Advanced Analytics and Real Application Testing options Buildfile: /usr/TKLC/xIH/apps/trace-refdata-adapter/build.xml  app.disable:  common.weblogic.stop: [echo] [echo] [echo] ===== [echo] application: xihtra [echo] date: 2015-10-01 15:04:41 [echo] ===== [echo] === stop application EAR [echo] date: 2015-10-01 15:04:41 [java] weblogic.Deployer invoked with options: -adminurl t3://appserver:7001 -userconfigprojects/domains/tekelec/keyfile.secure -name xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter -stop [java] &lt;Oct 1, 2015 3:05:08 PM EDT&gt; &lt;Info&gt; &lt;J2EE Deployment SPI&gt; &lt;BEA-260121&gt; &lt;Initiating [java] Task 24 initiated: [Deployer:149026]stop application xIH Trace Reference Data Adap [java] Task 24 completed: [Deployer:149026]stop application xIH Trace Reference Data Adap [java] Target state: stop completed on Server nsp [java]  BUILD SUCCESSFUL Total time: 29 seconds Buildfile: /usr/TKLC/xIH/apps/trace-refdata-adapter/build.xml  app.enable:  common.weblogic.start: [echo] [echo] [echo] ===== [echo] application: xihtra [echo] date: 2015-10-01 15:05:10 [echo] ===== [echo] === start application EAR [echo] date: 2015-10-01 15:05:10 [java] weblogic.Deployer invoked with options: -adminurl t3://appserver:7001 -userconfigprojects/domains/tekelec/keyfile.secure -name xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter -start [java] &lt;Oct 1, 2015 3:05:56 PM EDT&gt; &lt;Info&gt; &lt;J2EE Deployment SPI&gt; &lt;BEA-260121&gt; &lt;Initiating [java] Task 25 initiated: [Deployer:149026]start application xIH Trace Reference Data Ada [java] Task 25 completed: [Deployer:149026]start application xIH Trace Reference Data Ada [java] Target state: start completed on Server nsp [java]  BUILD SUCCESSFUL Total time: 1 minute 17 seconds </pre> <p>For prompt “Please enter DSR SOAM server IP address”, enter the VIP of the DSR SOAM and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the address entered is unreachable the script will exit with error “Unable to connect to &lt;ip-address&gt;!”</p>
DSR-8.0/8.1	164	February 2018

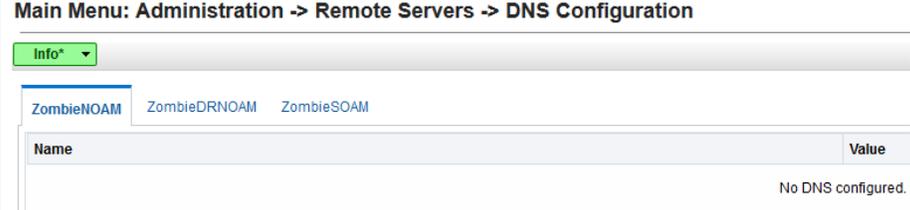
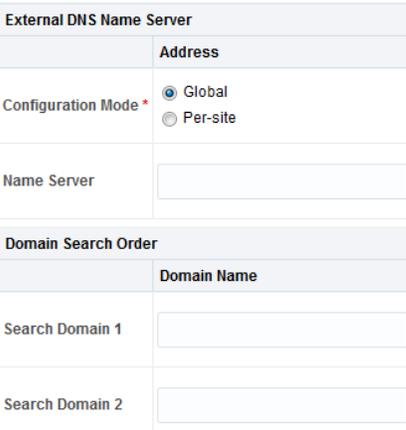
**Procedure 29: Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH**

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH App Server:</b> Monitor Completion	Monitor the log file located at: <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"><code>/var/TKLC/xIH/log/apps/weblogic/apps/application.log</code></div> Examine the log file for entries containing text “ <b>Trace Reference Data Adapter</b> ”
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>iDIH App Server (Optional):</b> Switch iDIH from one DSR to another DSR in a different network	<p><b>Note:</b> This is an optional step which is needed to switch an IDIH from one DSR to another DSR in a different network</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Establish an SSH session to the iDIH Application Server.</li> <li>2. Login as the <b>tekelec</b> user</li> </ol> <p style="margin-left: 20px;"><b><u>Execute the below commands</u></b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. <code>cd /usr/TKLC/xIH/apps/trace-refdata-adapter</code></li> <li>4. <code>ant clean.data</code></li> <li>5. <code>cd /usr/TKLC/xIH/apps/xihoam</code></li> <li>6. <code>ant imp.init</code> (flush comagent connection data)</li> <li>7. <code>cd /usr/TKLC/xIH/apps/trace-refdata-adapter</code></li> <li>8. <code>ant app.enable</code> (Sync MOs from SOAM )</li> <li>9. <code>cd /usr/TKLC/xIH/apps</code></li> <li>10. <code>./trda-config.sh &lt;DSR SOAM VIP in different network&gt;</code></li> </ol>

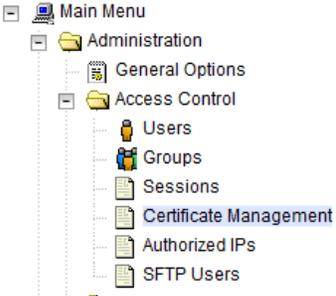
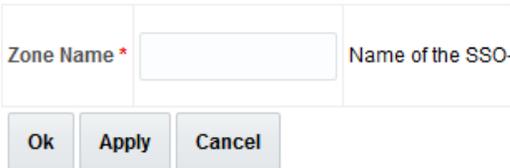
**Procedure 30: IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (Optional)**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure SSO Domain for IDIH</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>https://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 

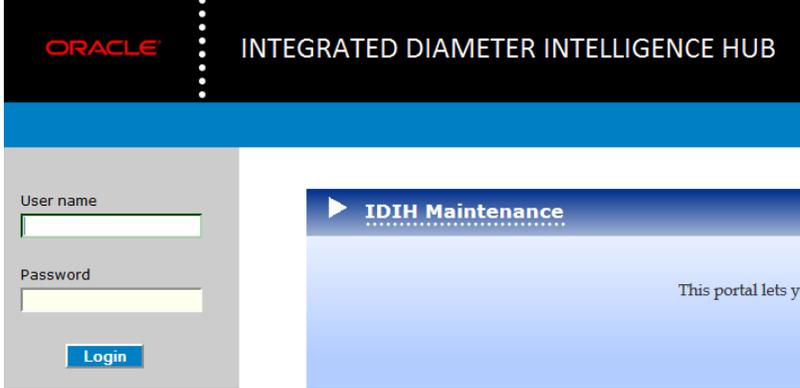
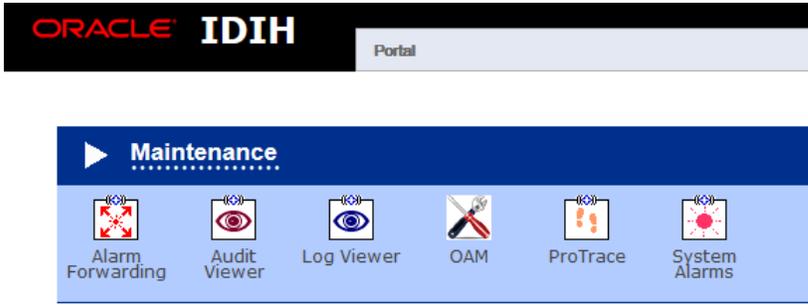
**Procedure 30: IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (Optional)**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure DNS</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Remote Servers -&gt; DNS Configuration</b></p>  <p>Select the NOAM tab:</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Administration -&gt; Remote Servers -&gt; DNS Configuration</b></p>  <p>Configure values for the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Domain Name</li> <li>• Name Server</li> <li>• Search Domain 1</li> </ul>  <p>If values have already been configured, select the <b>Cancel</b> button; otherwise configure the above values and select the <b>OK</b> button.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p>
------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

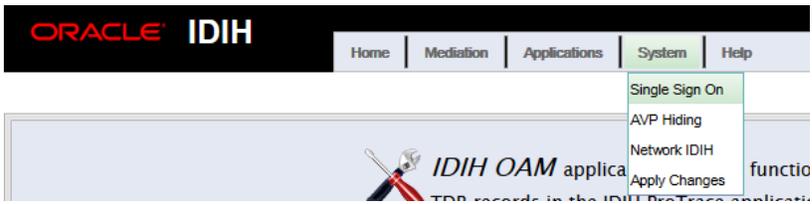
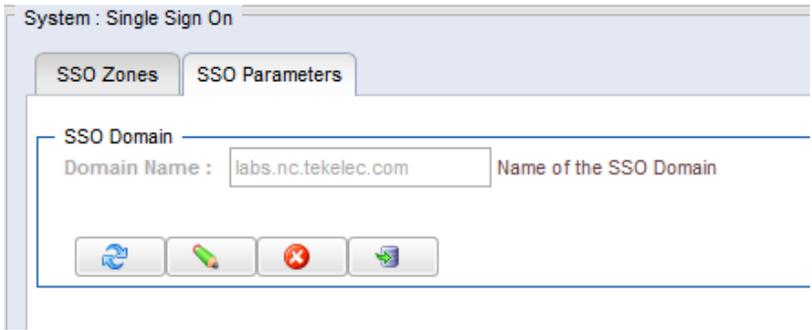
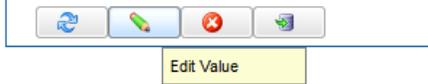
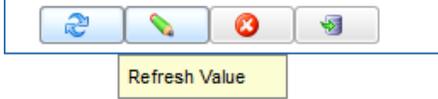
**Procedure 30: IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (Optional)**

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Establish SSO Local Zone</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Access Control -&gt; Certification Management</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Establish SSO Zone</b> button</p>  <p>Enter a value for Zone Name:</p>  <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button.</p> <p>Information for the new Certificate type of SSO Local is now displayed.</p> <p>Select the <b>Report</b> button.</p>  <p>The Certificate Report is displayed. Select and copy the encoded certificate text to the clipboard for future access.</p> <p>Example of Certificate report:</p> <pre> -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- MIICKzCCAdWgAwIBAgIJAOVfSLNc3CeJMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMHExCzAJBgNV BAYTA1VTMQswCQYDVQQIDAJQzEQMA4GA1UEBwwHUmfSZWlnaDEPMA0GA1UECgwG T3JhY2x1MQswCQYDVQQIDAJQzEQMA4GA1UEAwHTG1iZXJ0eTETMBEGCSqGSIb3 DQEJARYEdGVzdAeFw0xNTA1MDQxNDIzNTRaFw0xNjA1MDMxNDIzNTRaMHExCzAJ BgNVBAYTA1VTMQswCQYDVQQIDAJQzEQMA4GA1UEBwwHUmfSZWlnaDEPMA0GA1UE CgwGT3JhY2x1MQswCQYDVQQIDAJQzEQMA4GA1UEAwHTG1iZXJ0eTETMBEGCSqG SIb3DQEJARYEdGVzdDBcMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA0sAMEgCQQCZ/MpkhlvMP/iJ s5xDO2MwxJm3jYim43H8gR9pfBTMNP6L9kluJYi+2T0hngJFQLpIn6SK6pXnuAGY f/vDwfqPAGMBAAGjUDBOMB0GA1UdDgQWBBS6IzIOLP1gizQ6+BERr8Fo2XyDVDAf BgNVHSMEGDAWgBS6IzIOLP1gizQ6+BERr8Fo2XyDAMDAMBGNVHRMEBTADAQH/MA0G CSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAA0EAOwIqBMEQyvfv38r/yfgIx3w5dN8SBwHjHC5TpJrHV6U zFlg5dfzoLz7ditjGOhWJ919VRw39LQ81KFp7SMXwA== -----END CERTIFICATE-----                 </pre>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

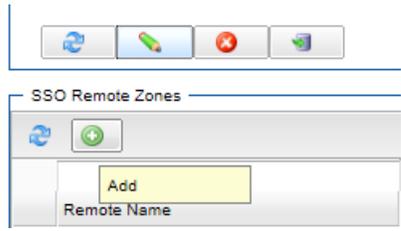
**Procedure 30: IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (Optional)**

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH Application Server GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the IDIH app server:</p> <p>Login as the <i>idihadmin</i> user:</p> 
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH Application Server GUI: Launch the OAM portal</b></p>	<p>Navigate to the OAM portal Icon to Launch the OAM web application:</p> 

**Procedure 30: IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (Optional)**

<p>6</p> <p>□</p> <p><b>IDIH Application Server GUI:</b> Configure the SSO Domain</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>System -&gt; Single Sign on</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>SSO Parameters</b> Tab</p>  <p>Select the <b>Edit Value</b> Icon Button</p>  <p>Enter a value for the Domain Name.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This should be the same domain name assigned in the DSR NOAM DNS Configuration (<b>Step 2</b>)</p> <p>Select the <b>Save</b> icon button.</p>  <p>Select the <b>Refresh</b> icon button to display data saved for the Remote Zone.</p> 
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 30: IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (Optional)**

<p>7</p> <p>□</p> <p><b>DIH Application Server GUI:</b> Configure the SSO Remote Zone</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>System -&gt; Single Sign on</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>SSO Zones</b> Tab</p>  <p>Select the <b>Add</b> icon button</p>  <p>Enter a value for field <b>Remote Name</b></p>  <p>For field <b>X.509 Certificate</b>, paste the encoded certificate text from the clipboard that was previously copied from the DSR NOAM.</p> <pre> X.509 Certificate -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- MIENTCCAx2gAwI/BAgI/BA MAGGA1UECgwGT3JhY2xIMREwDwYDVQQLDAhBCHB: CQEWEnN1cHBycmRAb3JhY2xIMNvbTAeFw0xNTA3M1 FDASBgNVBAAwMCD1venJpc3ZpbGxiMQ8wDQYDVQQK dHlwZT1BV1NTTzEhMB8GCSpGSlb3DQEJARYSz3Vwci ywYDdhXchb5bhORLUGCsSpo4RzHHlvKAu7DNi2GSs9; DrVBDyqDqmBhP1stxGAaBFhnbSuUms2Qgy4mKppfeyX LLx5+c5EwkS8OhB9AVqwjX+oET58WYKAgIX82e8rAAI FoAUmwCZ+1CZucSz4AivqXb122X/SLYwDAYDVR0TBAI LjI7N8HC9AEe0S8akEdE9pJHP7NwGjY1v5581Z2dnJ2e dxoXmVS5tEOO5Ea5PKk6Zyl3QCet1sEa5CRjilbOU94hj; CERTIFICATE-----                     </pre> <p>Select the <b>save</b> icon</p>  <p>Select the <b>Refresh</b> icon to display the data saved for remote zone.</p> 
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 31: IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to complete the IDIH integration on the DSR.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>https://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Configure CommAgent Connection</b></p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Communcation Agent -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Remote Servers</b></p>

**Procedure 31: IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR**



Select the **Insert** button

Insert
Edit
Delete

Add the IDIH Mediation Server

For the Remote Server IP address field, enter the IMI IP address of the IDIH Mediation Server.

For the IP address Preference field, enter the IP protocol preference (if IPv6 and IPv4 are configured)

**Inserting Remote Servers**

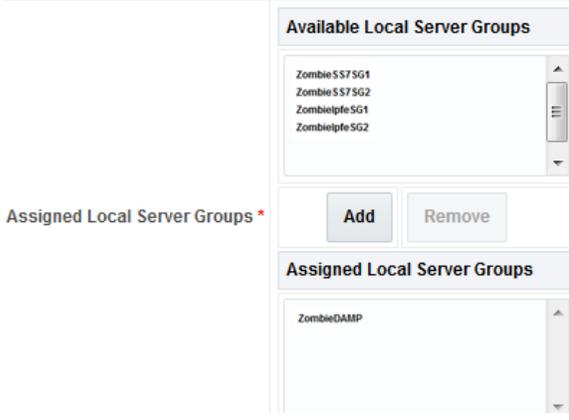
Field	Value
Remote Server Name *	<input type="text"/>
Remote Server IPv4 IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Remote Server IPv6 IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Remote Server Mode *	-- Select --
IP Address Preference	ComAgent Network Preference

Set the Remote Server Mode to **Server**

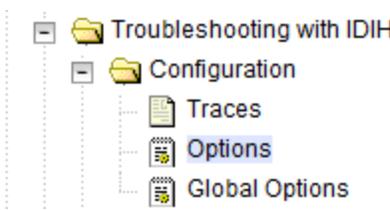
Select the DA-MP server group from the **Available Local Server Groups** column

Click the **Add** button to move the DA-MP server group to the **Assigned Local Server Groups** column

**Procedure 31: IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR**

		 <p>Click <b>OK</b></p>
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p><b>https://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr/> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>

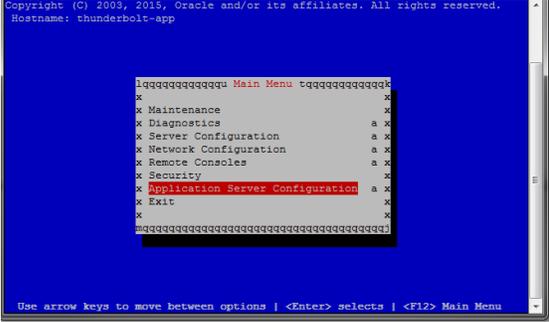
**Procedure 31: IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR**

4	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure IDIH Hostname</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Diameter -&gt; Troubleshooting with IDIH -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Options</b></p>  <p>From the drop down box, Select the mediation server configured in Step to in the <b>IDIH Host Name</b> field</p> <p>Enter the fully qualified domain name (or IP address) of the App server in the <b>IDIH Visualization Address</b> field:</p> <p><b>IDIH Configuration</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Field</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Value</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Descri</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Max bandwidth *</td> <td style="text-align: center;">25</td> <td>Maximu will dis [Default</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IDIH Host Name</td> <td style="text-align: center;">- Select -</td> <td>The Ho [Default</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IDIH Visualization address</td> <td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 150px;"></td> <td>The IP : If an IP [Default</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p> <p>Click the <b>Apply</b> button</p>	Field	Value	Descri	Max bandwidth *	25	Maximu will dis [Default	IDIH Host Name	- Select -	The Ho [Default	IDIH Visualization address		The IP : If an IP [Default
Field	Value	Descri												
Max bandwidth *	25	Maximu will dis [Default												
IDIH Host Name	- Select -	The Ho [Default												
IDIH Visualization address		The IP : If an IP [Default												

**Procedure 32: IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server (Optional)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SMTP mail server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This procedure is optional; however, this option is required for Security (password initialization set to AUTOMATIC) and Forwarding (forwarding by mail filter defined) and is available only on the Application server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH Application Server: Login</b>	Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server, login as <b>admusr</b> .

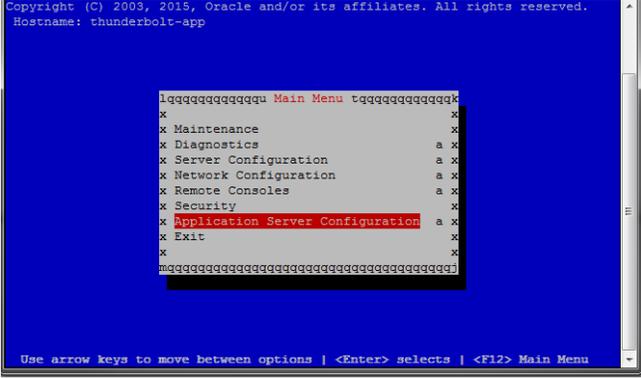
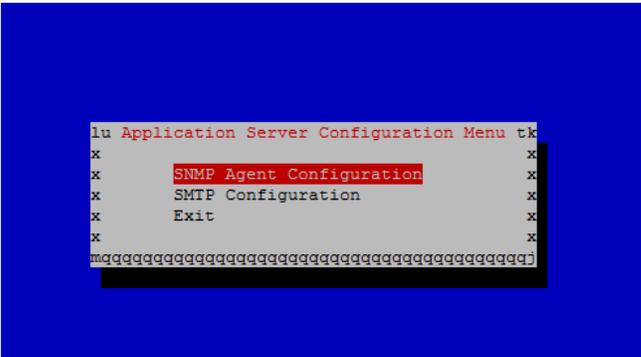
**Procedure 32: IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server (Optional)**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH Application Server:</b> Configure the Authenticated Mail Server</p>	<p>Enter the platcfg menu, execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>\$ sudo su - platcfg</b></p> </div> <p>Select <b>Application Server Configuration</b></p>  <p>Select <b>SMTP Configuration</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Edit</b></p> <p>Enter the following parameters:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Mail Server IP Address</li> <li>2. User</li> <li>3. Password</li> <li>4. Email Address (From)</li> <li>5. Mail smtp timeout</li> <li>6. Mail smtp connectiontimeout</li> <li>7. SNMP over SSL used?</li> </ol> <p>Select <b>OK</b></p> <p>Select <b>Exit</b> to exit the platcfg menu</p>
------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 33: IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server (Optional)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SNMP management server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This procedure is optional; however, this option is required for Forwarding (forwarding by SNMP filter defined) and is available only on the application server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH Application Server: Login</b>	Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server, login as <b>admusr</b> .

**Procedure 33: IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server (Optional)**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>IDIH Application Server:</b> Configure SNMP Management Server</p>	<p>Enter the platcfg menu, execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>\$ sudo su - platcfg</b></p> </div> <p>Select <b>Application Server Configuration</b></p>  <p>Select <b>SNMP Agent Configuration</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Edit</b></p> <p>Enter the IP address of the SNMP Management Server</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The SNMP agent configuration is updated and the SNMP Management server is automatically restarted.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b></p> <p>Select <b>Exit</b> to exit the platcfg menu.</p>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 34: IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface (Optional)**

<b>S T E P #</b>		<p>This procedure will provide the steps to change the default network interface</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Initially the default network interface used to transport TTRs from DSR to DIH uses the internal imi network; however, this can be changed if required. It should be noted that changing this interface could degrade performance of TTR transmission.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> A script is provided to manage the settings so that the operator doesn't need to know the details required to apply the settings. There are two settings 'interface.name' and 'interface.enabled'.</p> <p>When interface.enabled=True then communications over the 'interface.name =value', where value is the name of the network interface as defined on the platform, is the only specified interface that is used for communications.</p> <p>When 'interface.enabled=False' then communications over the named interface is not enforced, that is, all interfaces configured on the platform are allowed to be used for communications.</p> <p>For example, if it is required to use the xmi interface for communication instead of the default internal imi interface, then the operator would supply 'xmi' when prompted for the interface name and 'True' when prompted if interface filtering should be applied.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH Mediation Server: Login</b>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Mediation Server. Login as user <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Issue the following commands to login as <b>tekelec</b> user.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo su - tekelec</pre>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH Mediation Server: Execute the Change Interface Script</b>	<p>Execute the change interface script with the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ chgIntf.sh</pre> <p>Answer the following questions during execution of the script:</p> <p>This script is used to change the interface name (default = imi) used for mediation communications and whether to enable network interface filtering or not. Please answer the following questions or enter CTRL-C to exit out of the script.</p> <p>Current setting are: interface.name=imi interface.enabled=True</p> <p>Enter new network interface name, return to keep current [imi]: <b>xmi</b></p> <p>Do you want to enable network interface filtering [True False], return to keep current [True]:</p> <p>Updating configuration properties file with 'interface.name=xmi' and 'interface.enable=True', and restarting mediation configuration bundle...</p>

**Procedure 35: IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File (Optional)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to generate a disaster recovery fdc file.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Identify Backup Server</b>	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC: Establish Terminal Session</b>	Establish an SSH session to the PMAC. Login as <i>admusr</i> .
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC: Verify Upgrade fdc file exists</b>	<p>Execute the following commands to verify the upgrade FDC file for IDIH exists:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ cd /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin \$ ls -l *.xml</pre> <p>The following output is expected:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">-rw-r----- 1 root smac 9542 May 11 09:43 &lt;idih_install&gt;.xml -rw-r----- 1 root smac 5107 May 11 09:43 &lt;idih_upgrade&gt;.xml</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> The &lt;idih_upgrade&gt;.xml file is the same file used for upgrade and disaster recovery procedures.</p>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC: Transfer the FDC file to a remote server.</b>	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;PMAC_IP_Address&gt;:/var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin/&lt;idih_upgrade.xml&gt; /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [7] Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>

**Procedure 35: IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File (Optional)**

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC Server:</b> Backup FDC file	<p>Transfer the fdc file to the fdc directory so that the file can be backed up with PMAC backups.</p> <p>Issue the following command to ensure that the directory where the backups will be stored exists:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /bin/ls -i -l /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/fdc</pre> <p>If you receive an error such as the following:</p> <pre>-bash: ls: /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/fdc: No such file or directory</pre> <p>Create the directory by issuing the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /bin/mkdir -p /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/fdc</pre> <p>Issue the following command to copy the fdc files to the fdc backup directory:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cp /var/TKLC/smac/etc/&lt;idih_upgrade.xml&gt; /usr/TKLC/smac/etc/fdc/</pre>
-------------------------------	----------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 36: IDIH Configuration: Change Alarm Ignore List (Optional)**

<p><b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to change the alarm severity and/or identifiers to ignore on the mediation server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Initially the default is to ignore alarms with severity 4 (informational)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> A script is provided to manage the settings so that the operator does not need to know the details required to apply the settings. There are two settings 'ignore.event' and 'ignore.severity'</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH Mediation Server: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Mediation Server. Login as user <b><i>admusr.</i></b></p> <p>Issue the following commands to login as tekelec user.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">\$ sudo su - tekelec</pre>

**Procedure 36: IDIH Configuration: Change Alarm Ignore List (Optional)**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH Mediation Server:</b> Execute the Change Interface Script</p>	<p>Execute the change alarms script with the following command:</p> <pre>\$ chgAlms.sh</pre> <p>Answer the following questions during execution of the script:</p> <p>This script is used to change ignore list for mediation alarms. There are two lists, one for Severity where the list contains the severity values (no spaces, comma separated). Severity default list = '4' Possible severity values are:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Critical error</li> <li>2 Major error</li> <li>3 Minor error</li> <li>4 Information only; no error</li> <li>5 Cleared</li> </ol> <p>The other is the event list which contains the (comcol) event numbers (no spaces, comma separated). Please answer the following questions or enter CTRL-C to exit out of the script.</p> <p>Current setting are: ignore.event= ignore.severity=4</p> <p>Enter new ignore list for alarm severity (comma separated list) or '0' to keep current [4]: 0</p> <p>Enter new ignore list for alarm events (comma separated list) or '0' to keep current []: 0</p> <p>Updating configuration properties file with 'ignore.severity=4' and 'ignore.event='</p> <p>Backing-up configuration properties with 'ignore.severity=4' and 'ignore.event='</p> <p>Restarting ImpAlarms process ...</p> <p>Done!</p>
------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## 4.7 Post-Install Activities

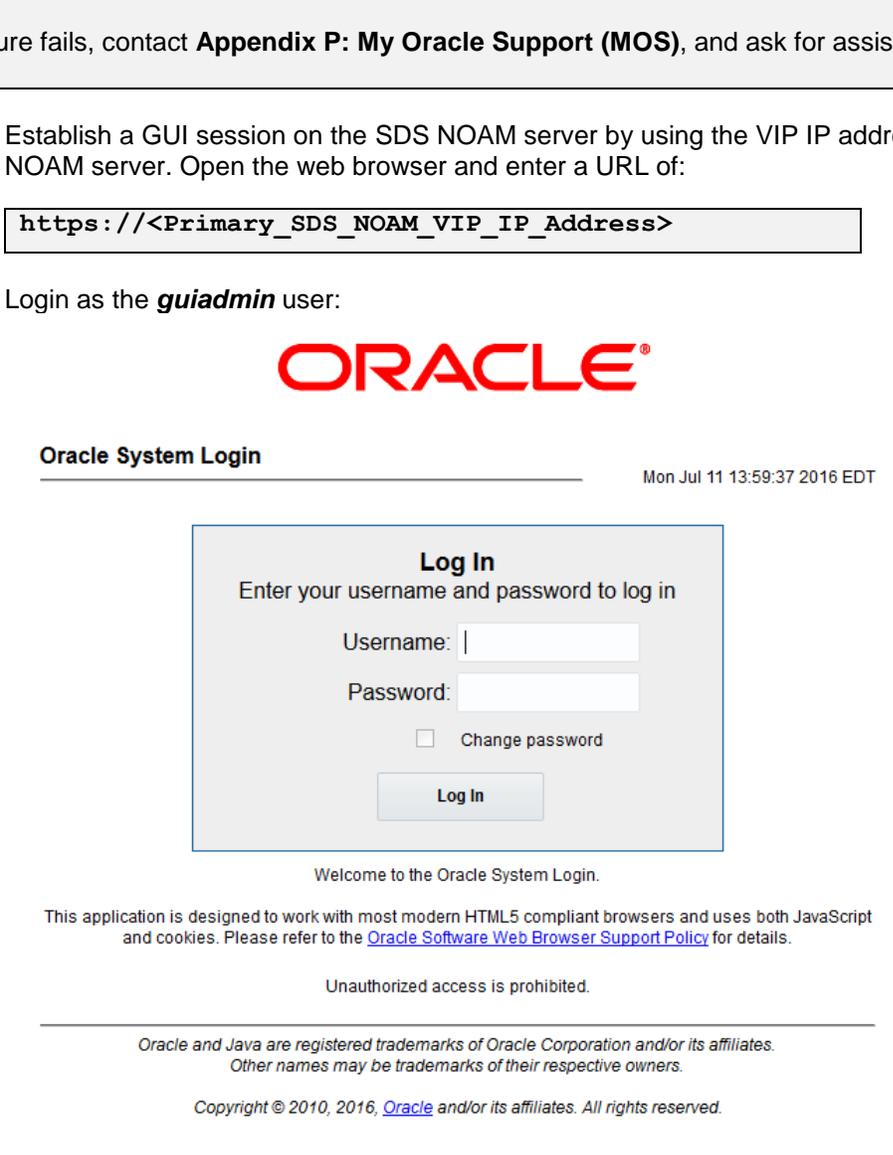
### 4.7.1 Activate Optional Features

#### Procedure 37: Activate Optional Features

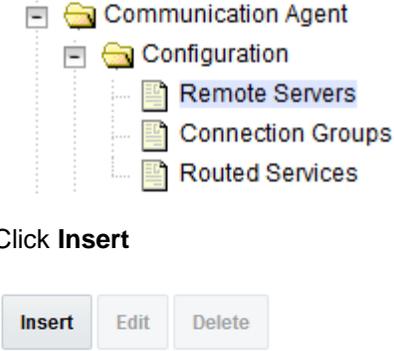
<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to install DSR optional components once regular installation is complete.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> All previous DSR installation steps have been completed.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Refer to Activation Guides for Optional Features</b>	Refer to 3.3 Optional Features for a list of feature activation documents whose procedures are to be executed at this moment.

### 4.7.2 Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)

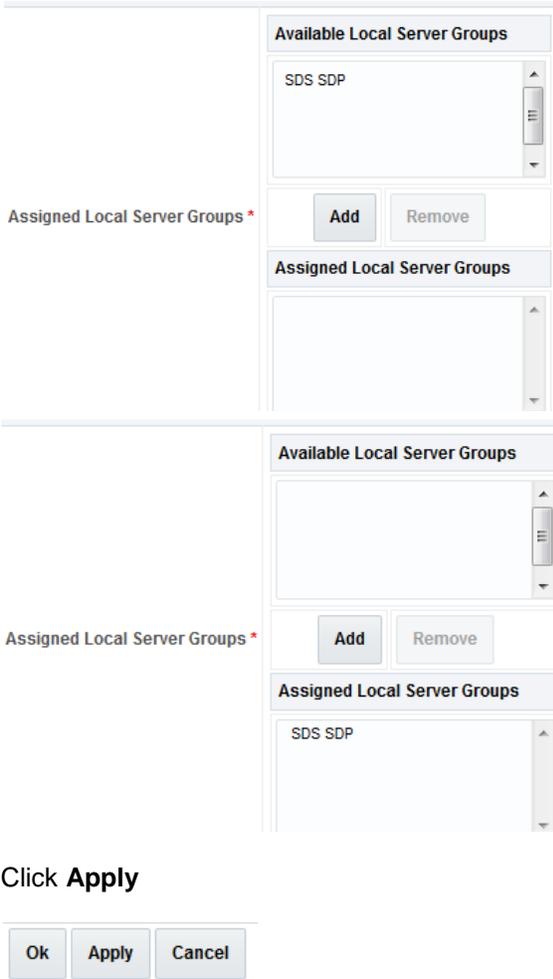
#### Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to configure ComAgent connections on DSR/SDS for use in the FABR application.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> FABR application is activated.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>SDS NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SDS NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>https://&lt;Primary_SDS_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>SDS NOAM VIP GUI: Configure Remote</b></p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Communication Agent -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Remote Servers</b></p>

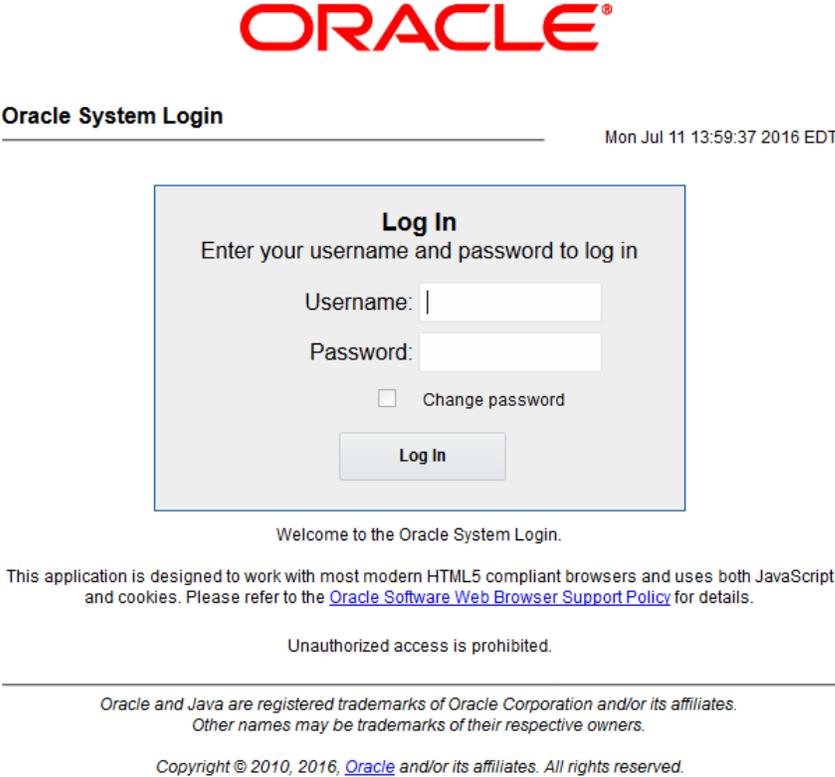
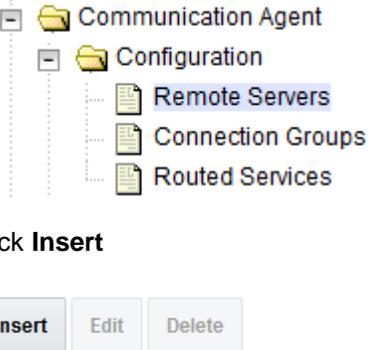
**Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)**

	<p>Server IP Address</p>	 <p>Click <b>Insert</b></p>
<p>3 □</p>	<p><b>SDS NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure Remote Server IP Address</p>	<p>Enter the Remote Server Name for the DSR MP Server:</p> <p>Remote Server Name * <input type="text" value="ZombieDAMP1"/></p> <p>Enter the Remote Server IMI IP address:</p> <p>Remote Server IPv4 IP Address <input type="text" value="169.254.1.13"/></p> <p>Remote Server IPv6 IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>Note:</b> This should be the IMI IP address of the DAMP server.</p> <p>Select <b>Client</b> for the Remote Server Mode from the pull down menu:</p> <p>Remote Server Mode * <input type="text" value="Client"/> ▼</p> <p>Select Preference (ComAgent Network Preference, IPv4, or IPv6) for IP Address Preference pull down menu:</p> <p>IP Address Preference <input type="text" value="ComAgent Network Preference"/> ▼</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ComAgent Network Preference</li> <li>IPv4 Preferred</li> <li>IPv6 Preferred</li> </ul> <p>Select the <b>Local Server Group</b> from the available SDS DP server groups and click <b>'Add'</b> to assign.</p>

**Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)**

		 <p>Click <b>Apply</b></p>
<p>4</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>SDS NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Repeat</p>	<p>Repeat <b>steps 2-3</b> for each remote MP in the same SOAM NE.</p>
<p>5</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>DSR NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the DSR NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>https://&lt;Primary_DSR_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>

**Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)**

		
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>DSR NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure Remote Server IP Address</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Communication Agent -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Remote Servers</b></p>  <p>Click <b>Insert</b></p>
<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>DSR NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure Remote Server IP Address</p>	<p>Enter the Remote Server Name for the SDS DP Server:</p>  <p>Enter the Remote Server IMI IP address:</p>

**Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)**

	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>Remote Server IPv4 IP Address <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="169.254.1.30"/></p> <hr/> <p>Remote Server IPv6 IP Address <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> This should be the IMI IP address of the DP Server.</p> <p>Select <b>Server</b> for the Remote Server Mode from the pull down menu:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>Remote Server Mode * <span style="float: right;">Server ▼</span></p> </div> <p>Select Preference (ComAgent Network Preference, IPv4, or IPv6) for IP Address Preference pull down menu:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>IP Address Preference <span style="float: right;">ComAgent Network Preference ▼</span></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-top: 2px;"> <p>ComAgent Network Preference</p> <p style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">ComAgent Network Preference</p> <p>IPv4 Preferred</p> <p>IPv6 Preferred</p> </div> </div> <p>Select the <b>Local Server Group</b> from the available SDS DP server groups and click <b>'Add'</b> to assign:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <div style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; padding-bottom: 5px;"> <p><b>Available Local Server Groups</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ZombieDAMP</li> <li>ZombieSS7SG1</li> <li>ZombieSS7SG2</li> <li>ZombieIpfS1</li> <li>ZombieIpfS2</li> </ul> </div> <div style="padding: 5px;"> <p>Assigned Local Server Groups * <span style="float: right;">Add Remove</span></p> </div> </div> <div style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; padding-bottom: 5px;"> <p><b>Assigned Local Server Groups</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div> </div>
--	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Available Local Server Groups**

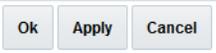
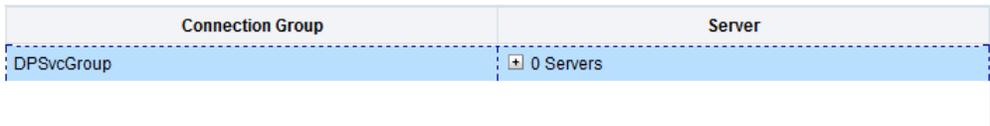
- ZombieSS7SG1
- ZombieSS7SG2
- ZombieIpfS1
- ZombieIpfS2

Assigned Local Server Groups \* Add Remove

**Assigned Local Server Groups**

ZombieDAMP

**Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)**

		<p>Click <b>Apply</b></p> 
8	<p><b>DSR</b> <b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Repeat</p>	<p>Repeat <b>steps 6-7</b> for each remote DP in the same SOAM NE.</p>
9	<p><b>DSR</b> <b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Configure Connectio n Groups</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Communication Agent -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Connection Groups</b></p> 
10	<p><b>DSR</b> <b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Edit Connectio n Groups</p>	<p>Select the DPSvcGroup Connection Group</p>  <p>Click <b>Edit</b></p> <p>Select the desired DP servers from the Available Servers in Network Element:</p>

**Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)**

		<p>Connection Group Name *</p> <p>DPSvcGroup</p>	<p>Connection Group. [Default: n/a; Range: A 32-character string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and underscore. Must contain at least one alpha and must not start with a digit.] [A value is required.]</p>
		<p>Assigned Servers in Connection Group *</p>	<div> <p><b>Available Servers in Network Element</b></p> <p>Turks-DP1 Turks-DP2</p> <p>Add Remove</p> <p><b>Assigned Servers in Connection Group</b></p> </div> <p>This field specifies the Remote Servers which can be in the Connection Group. Remote Servers which are available will be in the Available Servers in Network Element list. Remote Servers which are in the Connection Group will be in the Assigned Servers in Connection Group list. [Default = n/a; Range = List of configured Remote Servers]</p>
		<p>Click <b>Add</b></p>	
		<p>Connection Group Name *</p> <p>DPSvcGroup</p>	<p>Connection Group. [Default: n/a; Range: A 32-character string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and underscore. Must contain at least one alpha and must not start with a digit.] [A value is required.]</p>
		<p>Assigned Servers in Connection Group *</p>	<div> <p><b>Available Servers in Network Element</b></p> <p>Turks-DP2</p> <p>Add Remove</p> <p><b>Assigned Servers in Connection Group</b></p> <p>Turks-DP1</p> </div> <p>This field specifies the Remote Servers which can be in the Connection Group. Remote Servers which are available will be in the Available Servers in Network Element list. Remote Servers which are in the Connection Group will be in the Assigned Servers in Connection Group list. [Default = n/a; Range = List of configured Remote Servers]</p>
		<p>Ok Apply Cancel</p>	

**Procedure 38: Configure ComAgent Connections (DSR + SDS)**

		Click <b>Ok</b>						
1 1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>DSR NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify correct number of servers in group	<p>Verify Correct number of servers are in the connection group.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connection Group</th> <th>Server</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DPSvcGroup</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> 1 Server</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>-- <a href="#">SDSDP1</a></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connection Group	Server	DPSvcGroup	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 Server		-- <a href="#">SDSDP1</a>
Connection Group	Server							
DPSvcGroup	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 Server							
	-- <a href="#">SDSDP1</a>							

**4.7.3 Shared Secret Encryption Key Revocation (RADIUS ONLY)****Procedure 39: Shared secret encryption key revocation (RADIUS Only)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to change shared secret encryption key on DSR RADIUS setup.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Revoke RADIUS shared secret encryption key</b>	<p>Refer to RADIUS Shared Secret Key revocation MOP to change the encryption key on the DSR installed setup. Refer [11]</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This is highly recommended to change the key after installation due to security reasons.</p>

**4.7.4 Backup TVOE Configuration****Procedure 40: Backup TVOE Configuration**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up each TVOE rack mount server or Blade server after a successful installation.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Identify Backup Server</b>	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>



**Procedure 40: Backup TVOE Configuration**

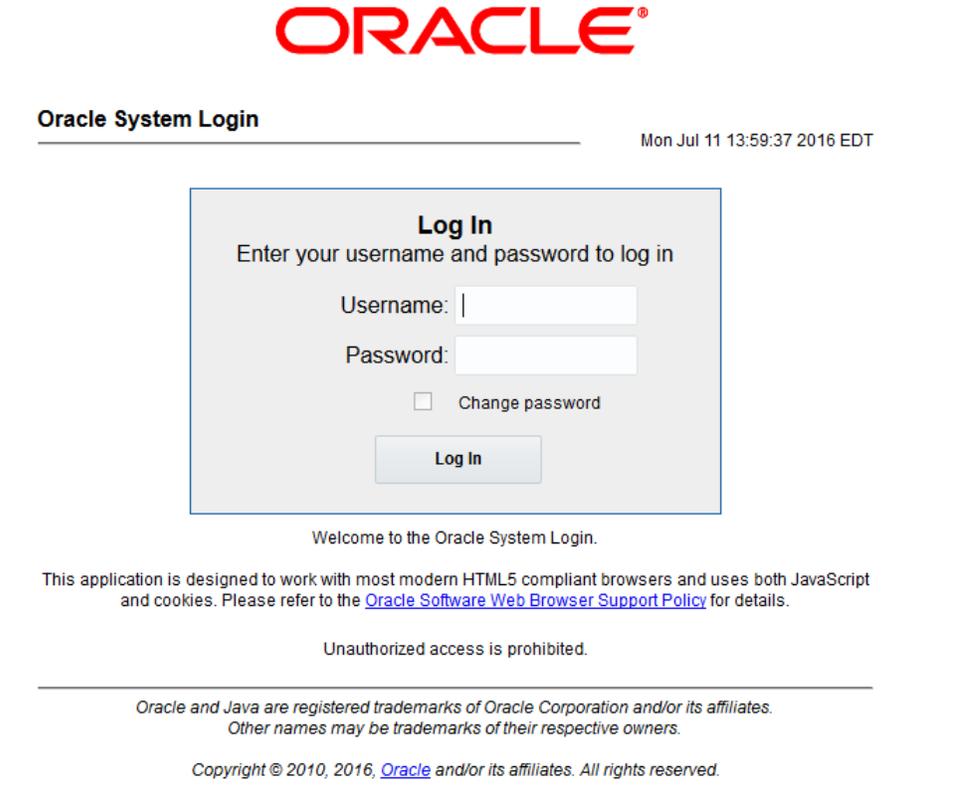
<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Backup Server:</b> Transfer TVOE Files to Backup Server</p>	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo scp tvoexfer@&lt;TVOE IP Address&gt;:backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the tvoexfer user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [7] Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <p>The TVOE backup file has now been successfully placed on the backup server.</p>
<p>5 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Repeat for Additional TVOE Servers</b></p>	<p>Repeat steps <b>3-4</b> for additional TVOE servers</p>

## 4.7.5 Backup PMAC Application

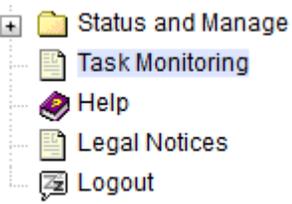
### Procedure 41: Backup PMAC Application

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up each PMAC application installed in this procedure.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Identify Backup Server</b>	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC Server: Login</b>	Establish an SSH session to the PMAC server, login as <b>admusr</b> .
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC Server: Build backup File</b>	<p>Execute the following command from the PMAC server:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/smac/bin/pmacadm backup</pre> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">PM&amp;C backup been successfully initiated as task ID 7</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> The backup runs as a background task. To check the status of the background task use the PMAC GUI Task Monitor page:</p> <p>or issue the command "<b>pmaccli getBgTasks</b>". The result should eventually be "PMAC Backup successful" and the background task should indicate "COMPLETE".</p>

**Procedure 41: Backup PMAC Application**

4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code>http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</code></div> <p>Login as <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> <div></div>
-------------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Procedure 41: Backup PMAC Application**

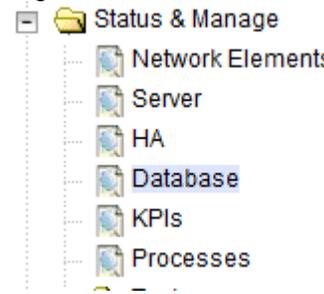
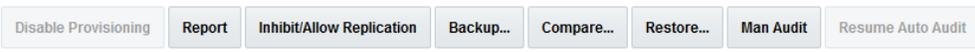
<p>5</p> <p>☐</p>	<p><b>PMAC Server GUI:</b> Monitor/Verify Backup Task Completion</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b></p>  <p>Monitor the Backup PMAC Task:</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Task Monitoring</b></p> <p>Filter* ▾</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Task</th> <th>Target</th> <th>Status</th> <th>State</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1458</td> <td>Backup PM&amp;C</td> <td></td> <td>PM&amp;C Backup successful</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> Alternatively, you can monitor the Backup task by executing the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo pmaccli getBgTasks</pre>	ID	Task	Target	Status	State	1458	Backup PM&C		PM&C Backup successful	COMPLETE
ID	Task	Target	Status	State								
1458	Backup PM&C		PM&C Backup successful	COMPLETE								
<p>6</p> <p>☐</p>	<p><b>Backup Server:</b> Transfer PMAC File to Backup Server</p>	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;PMAC_IP_Address&gt;:/var/TKLC/smac/backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [7] Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>										

### 4.7.6 Backup NOAM Database

#### Procedure 42: NOAM Database Backup

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up the NOAM Database.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Identify Backup Server</b>	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

**Procedure 42: NOAM Database Backup**

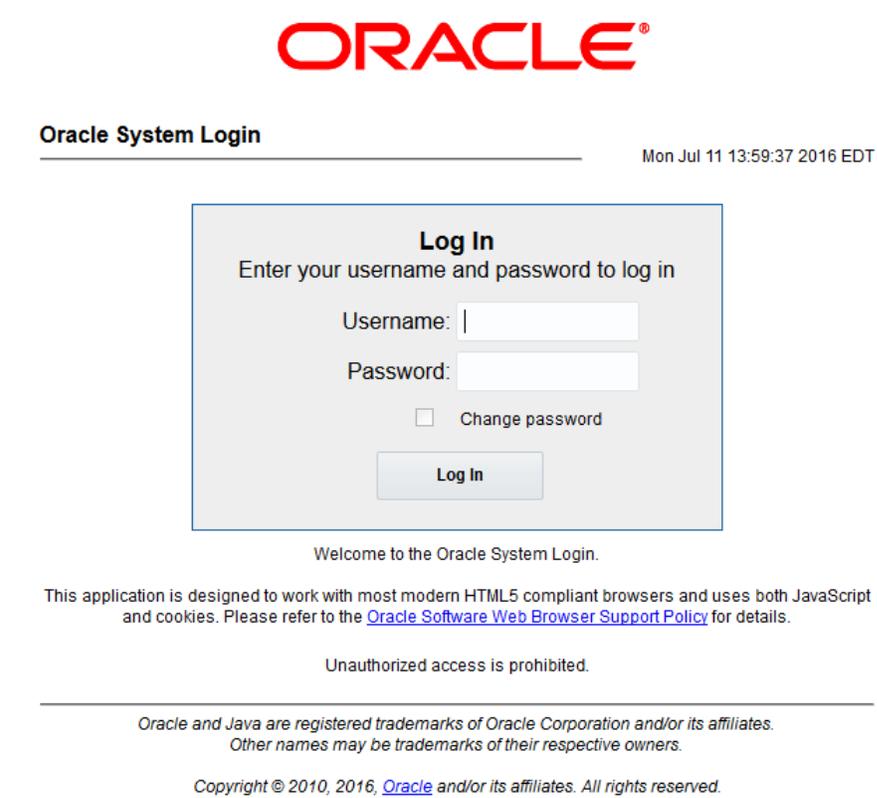
4	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Perform Database Backup</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Database</b></p>  <p>Select the Active NOAM</p> <p>Select the <b>Backup</b> Button:</p>  <p>Select the desired file compression method</p> <p><b>Database Backup</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 20%;">Field</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Value</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3"><b>Server: ZombieNOAM2</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Select data for backup</td> <td> <input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration                 </td> <td>Select the type of Backup to perform.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Compression *</td> <td> <input type="radio"/> gzip  <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2  <input type="radio"/> none                 </td> <td>                     Select the backup archive compression algorithm                      The following file suffix will be applied for the selected compression method:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• .tar.gz - gzip compression,</li> <li>• .tar.bz2 - bzip2 compression,</li> <li>• .tar - no compression.</li> </ul>                     [A value is required.]                 </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Archive Name *</td> <td>Backup.dsr.ZombieNOAM2.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20160810_13073</td> <td>Modify archive name if desired. Do not include the following characters: ` ' \$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Comment</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td>May not contain the following characters: ` ' \$</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Ok Cancel</p> <p>Set the archive file name if needed.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b></p>	Field	Value	Description	<b>Server: ZombieNOAM2</b>			Select data for backup	<input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration	Select the type of Backup to perform.	Compression *	<input type="radio"/> gzip <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2 <input type="radio"/> none	Select the backup archive compression algorithm The following file suffix will be applied for the selected compression method: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• .tar.gz - gzip compression,</li> <li>• .tar.bz2 - bzip2 compression,</li> <li>• .tar - no compression.</li> </ul> [A value is required.]	Archive Name *	Backup.dsr.ZombieNOAM2.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20160810_13073	Modify archive name if desired. Do not include the following characters: ` ' \$	Comment	<input type="text"/>	May not contain the following characters: ` ' \$
Field	Value	Description																		
<b>Server: ZombieNOAM2</b>																				
Select data for backup	<input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration	Select the type of Backup to perform.																		
Compression *	<input type="radio"/> gzip <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2 <input type="radio"/> none	Select the backup archive compression algorithm The following file suffix will be applied for the selected compression method: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• .tar.gz - gzip compression,</li> <li>• .tar.bz2 - bzip2 compression,</li> <li>• .tar - no compression.</li> </ul> [A value is required.]																		
Archive Name *	Backup.dsr.ZombieNOAM2.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20160810_13073	Modify archive name if desired. Do not include the following characters: ` ' \$																		
Comment	<input type="text"/>	May not contain the following characters: ` ' \$																		

**Procedure 42: NOAM Database Backup**

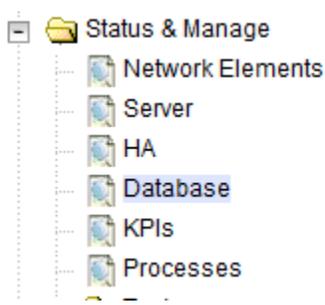
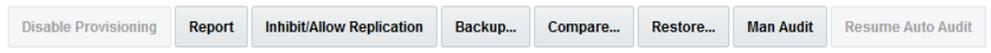
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup Server:</b> Transfer File to Backup Server	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image and key file (RADIUS Only) to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;NOAM VIP&gt;:/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>Execute following command to encrypt the key file before sending to filemgmt area :</p> <pre>\$ ./sharedKrevo -encr</pre> <p>Copy key file to customer server :</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;NOAM VIP&gt;:/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/DpiKf.bin.encr /path/to/destination /</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [7] Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>
-------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 4.7.7 Backup SOAM Database

#### Procedure 43: SOAM Database Backup

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up the SOAM Database.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Identify Backup Server</b></p>	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

**Procedure 43: SOAM Database Backup**

4	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Perform Database Backup</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Database</b></p>  <p>Select the Active SOAM</p> <p>Select the <b>Backup</b> Button:</p>  <p>Select the desired file compression method</p> <p><b>Database Backup</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Field</th> <th style="width: 50%;">Value</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Descrip</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3"><b>Server: ZombieSOAM1</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Select data for backup</td> <td> <input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration                 </td> <td>Select th</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Compression *</td> <td> <input type="radio"/> gzip  <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2  <input type="radio"/> none                 </td> <td>Select th The follo • .t • .t • .t [A value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Archive Name *</td> <td>Backup.dsr.ZombieSOAM1.Configuration.SYSTEM_OAM.20160810_130916.M</td> <td>Modify ar</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Comment</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td>May not i</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Ok Cancel</p> <p>Set the archive file name if needed.</p>	Field	Value	Descrip	<b>Server: ZombieSOAM1</b>			Select data for backup	<input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration	Select th	Compression *	<input type="radio"/> gzip <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2 <input type="radio"/> none	Select th The follo • .t • .t • .t [A value	Archive Name *	Backup.dsr.ZombieSOAM1.Configuration.SYSTEM_OAM.20160810_130916.M	Modify ar	Comment	<input type="text"/>	May not i
Field	Value	Descrip																		
<b>Server: ZombieSOAM1</b>																				
Select data for backup	<input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration	Select th																		
Compression *	<input type="radio"/> gzip <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2 <input type="radio"/> none	Select th The follo • .t • .t • .t [A value																		
Archive Name *	Backup.dsr.ZombieSOAM1.Configuration.SYSTEM_OAM.20160810_130916.M	Modify ar																		
Comment	<input type="text"/>	May not i																		

**Procedure 43: SOAM Database Backup**

6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup Server:</b> Transfer PMAC File to Backup Server	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;SOAM VIP&gt;:/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [7] Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Repeat for Additional TVOE Servers</b>	Repeat <b>steps 2-6</b> for additional SOAM Sites

**4.7.8 Enable/Disable DTLS (SCTP Diameter Connections Only)****Procedure 44: Enable/Disable DTLS (SCTP Diameter Connections Only)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instructions on how to prepare clients before configuring SCTP diameter connections.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <b>Important</b> </p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Oracle's SCTP Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) has SCTP AUTH extensions by default. SCTP AUTH extensions are required for SCTP DTLS. However, there are known impacts with SCTP AUTH extensions as covered by the CVEs referenced below. It is highly recommended that customers installing DSR should prepare clients before the DSR connections are established after installation. This will ensure the DSR to Client SCTP connection will establish with SCTP AUTH extensions enabled. See RFC 6083. If customers DO NOT prepare clients to accommodate the DTLS changes, then the SCTP connections to client devices WILL NOT establish after the DSR is installed.</p> <p><a href="https://access.redhat.com/security/cve/CVE-2015-1421">https://access.redhat.com/security/cve/CVE-2015-1421</a></p> <p><a href="https://access.redhat.com/security/cve/CVE-2014-5077">https://access.redhat.com/security/cve/CVE-2014-5077</a></p> <p>Execute procedures in [10] to disable/enable the DTLS feature.</p>	

## Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles

In order to enter all the network information for a network element, a specially formatted XML file needs to be filled out with the required network information. The network information is needed to configure both the NOAM and any SOAM Network Elements.

It is expected that the maintainer/creator of this file has networking knowledge of this product and the customer site at which it is being installed. This network element XML file is used for DSR deployments using Cisco 4948 switches and HP c-Class blade servers. The following is an example of a Network Element XML file.

The SOAM Network Element XML file needs to have same network names for the networks as the NOAMP Network Element XML file has. It is easy to accidentally create different network names for NOAMP and SOAM Network Element, and then the mapping of services to networks will not be possible.

Figure 5 Example Network Element XML File

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<networkelement>
<name>NE</name>
<networks>
<network>
<name>INTERNALXMI</name>
<vlanId>3</vlanId>
  <ip>10.2.0.0</ip>
<mask>255.255.255.0</mask>
<gateway>10.2.0.1</gateway>
<isDefault>>true</isDefault>
</network>
<network>
<name>INTERNALIMI</name>
<vlanId>4</vlanId>
<ip>10.3.0.0</ip>
<mask>255.255.255.0</mask>
<nonRoutable>>true</nonRoutable>
</network>
</networks>
</networkelement>
```

**'nonRoutable' Field:** By defining a network as 'nonRoutable' as seen above for INTERNALIMI, this means that the network shall not be routable outside the layer 3 boundary. This allows the user to define the same IP range in each SOAM site, and no duplicate IP check will be performed during server creation.

The server hardware information is needed to configure the Ethernet interfaces on the servers. This server hardware profile data XML file is used for DSR deployments using HP c-Class blade servers and HP c-Class rack-mount servers. It is supplied to the NOAM server so that the information can be pulled in and presented to the user in the GUI during server configuration. The following is an example of a Server Hardware Profile XML file.

Figure 6 Example Server Hardware Profile XML-HP c-Class Blade

```
<profile>
<serverType>HP c-Class Blade</serverType>
<available>
<device>bond0</device>
</available>
<devices>
<device>
<name>bond0</name>
<type>BONDING</type>
<createBond>>true</createBond>
<slaves>
<slave>eth01</slave>
<slave>eth02</slave>
</slaves>
<option>
<monitoring>mii</monitoring>
<interval>100</interval>
<upstream_delay>200</upstream_delay>
<downstream_delay>200</downstream_delay>
</option>
</device>
</devices>
</profile>
```

Figure 7 Example Server Hardware Profile XML- Virtual Guest on TVOE

```
<profile>
<serverType>TVOE Guest</serverType>
<available>
<device>Management</device>
<device>Control</device>
<device>xmi</device>
<device>imi</device>
<device>xsi</device>
</available>
<devices>
<device>
<name>management</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>control</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>xmi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>imi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>xsi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
</devices>
</profile>
```

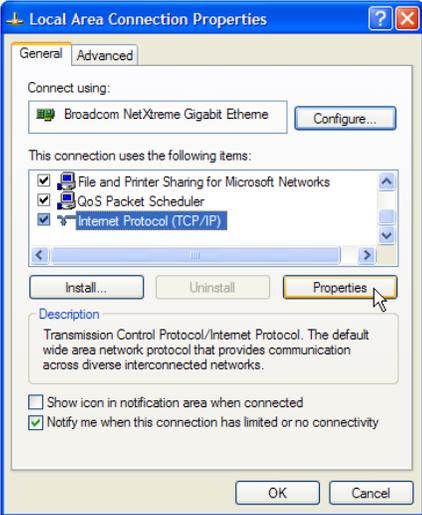
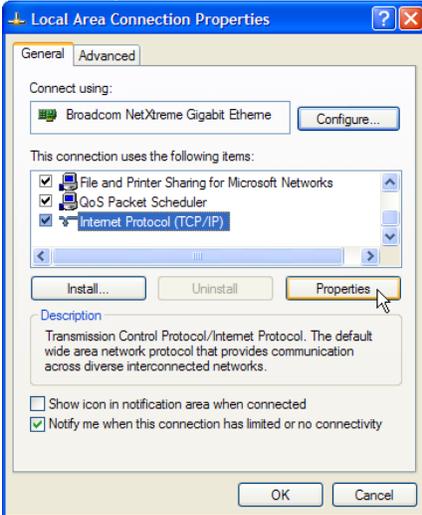
## Appendix B: Configuring for TVOE iLO Access

### Appendix B 1: Connecting to the TVOE iLO

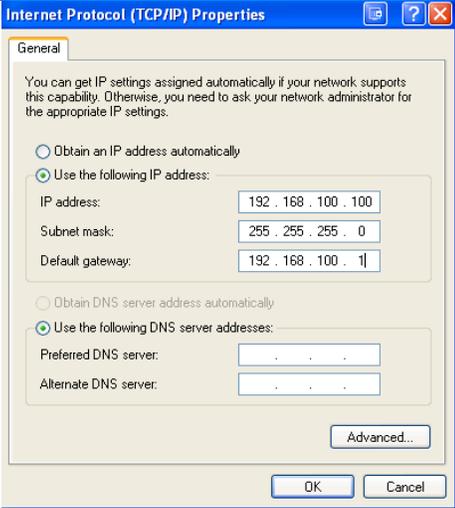
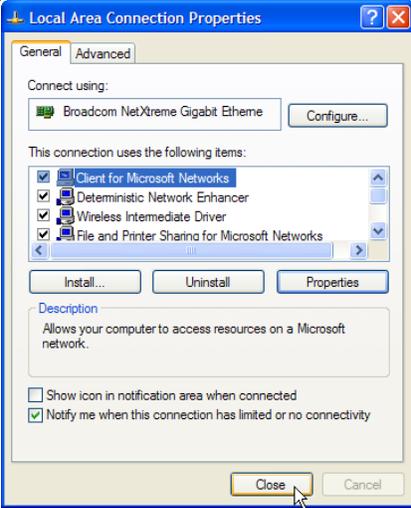
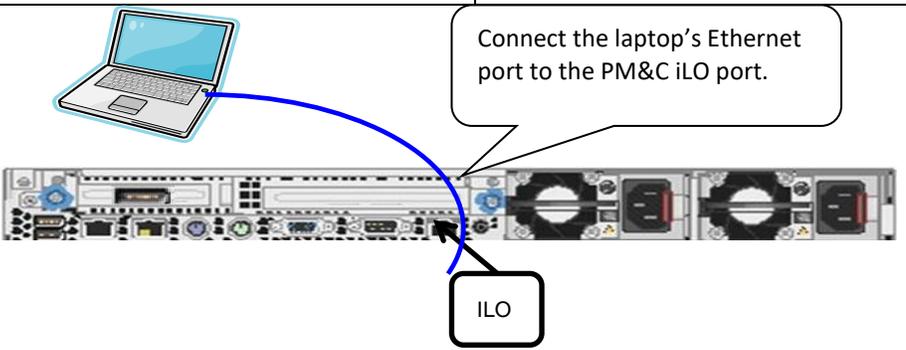
This procedure contains the steps to connect a laptop to the TVOE iLO via a directly cabled Ethernet connection.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Access the laptop network interface cards TCP/IP Properties screen.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For this step follow the instruction specific to the laptop's OS (XP or 7).</p>		<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Windows XP</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Go to <b>Control Panel</b></li> <li>• Double-click on <b>Network Connections</b></li> <li>• Right-click the wired Ethernet Interface icon and select <b>Properties</b></li> <li>• Select <b>Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)</b></li> </ul> <p>Select <b>Properties</b></p> 	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Windows 7</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Go to <b>Control Panel</b>.</li> <li>• Double-click on <b>Network and Sharing Center</b></li> <li>• Select <b>Change Adapter Settings</b> (left menu)</li> <li>• Right-click the <b>Local Area Connection</b> icon and select <b>Properties</b></li> </ul> <p>Select <b>Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)</b></p> 

**Appendix B 1: Connecting to the TVOE iLO**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Click <b>Use the following IP address</b></p> <p>Set the <b>IP address</b> to 192.168.100.100</p> <p>Set the <b>Subnet mask</b> to 255.255.255.0</p> <p>Set the <b>Default gateway</b> to 192.168.100.1</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>Select <b>Close</b> from the network interface card's main <b>Properties</b> screen.</p>		
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Connect the laptop's Ethernet port directly to the TVOE iLO port using a standard Cat-5 cross-over cable.</p>		

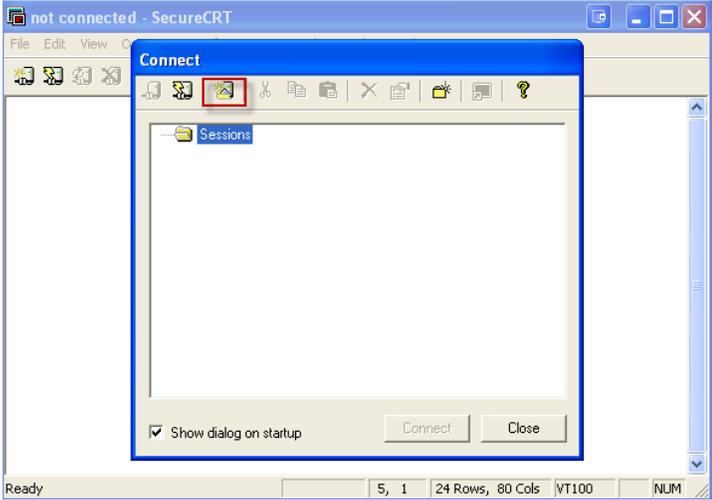
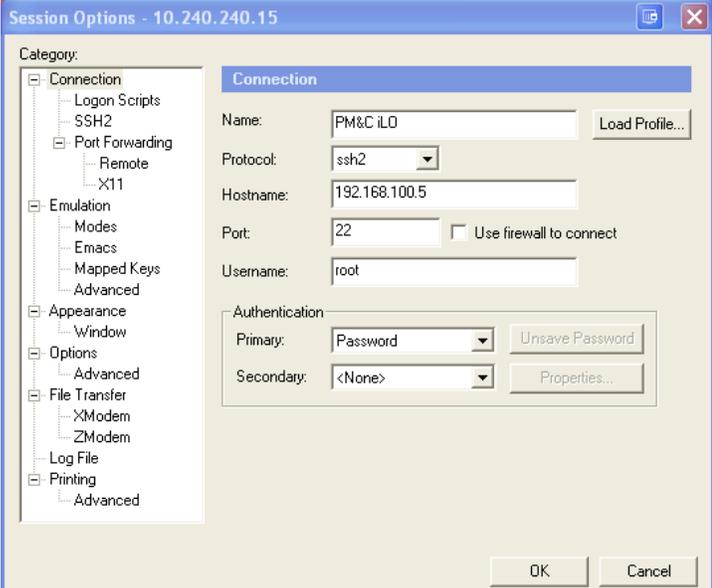
## Appendix C: TVOE iLO Access

### Appendix C 1: Accessing the TVOE iLO

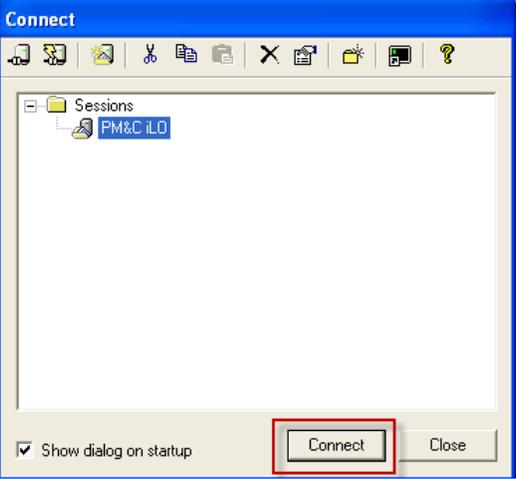
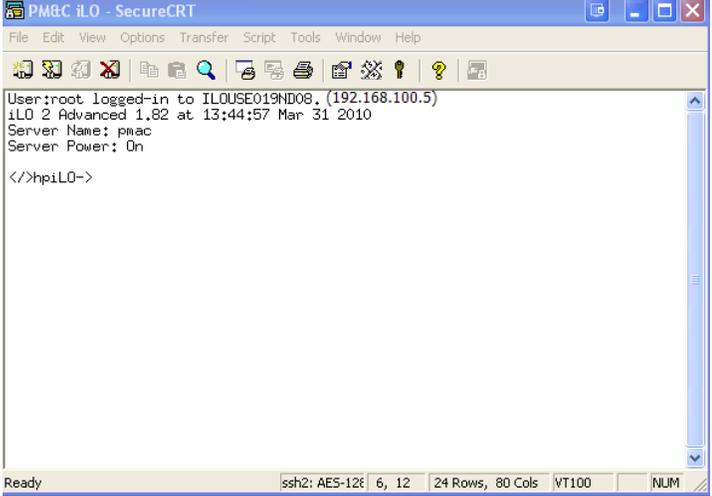
This procedure contains the steps to access the TVOE iLO.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Launch a terminal emulator, e.g. Putty, Secure CRT.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>File -&gt; Connect</b></p> <p>Click on the <b>New Session</b> icon.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This example demonstrates Secure CRT.</p>	
<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Enter TVOE iLO for <b>Name</b> 192.168.100.5(Manufacturing default) or customer IP set during installation for <b>Hostname</b>.</p> <p>Enter admusr for <b>Username</b>.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> See <b>Appendix B: Configuring for TVOE iLO Access</b> to configure your system network to access the TVOE iLO.</p>	

**Appendix C 1: Accessing the TVOE iLO**

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Navigate <b>File -&gt; Connect</b> to open the Connect window.</p> <p>Highlight the session you created and click <b>Connect</b>.</p>	
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Login</b> to the TVOE iLO using the appropriate password.</p>	
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>The TVOE iLO is displayed.</p>	

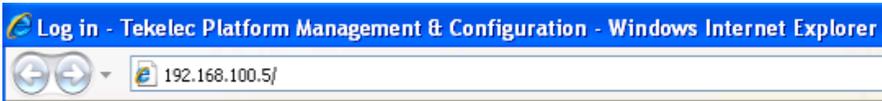
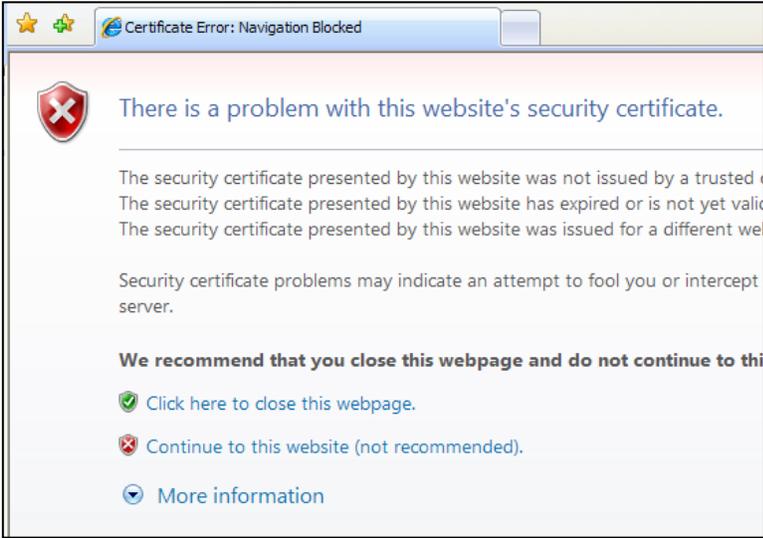
## Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 GUI Access

### Appendix D 1: TVOE iLO4 GUI Access

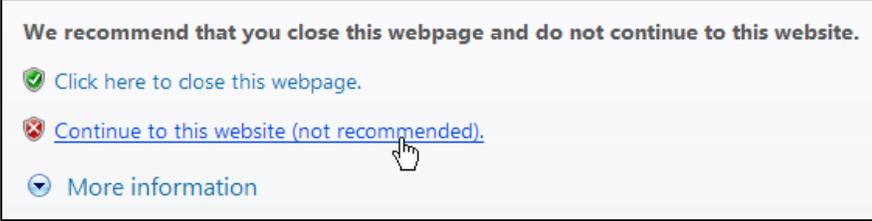
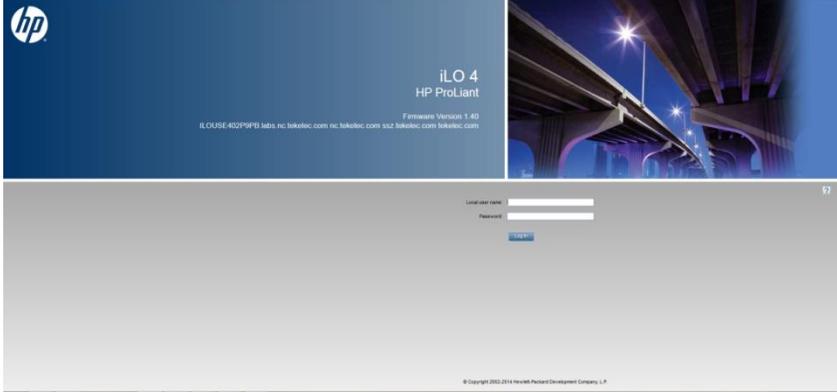
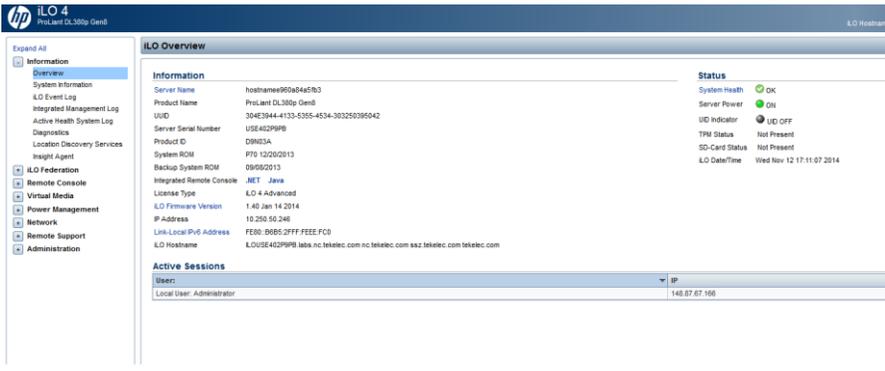
This procedure contains the steps to access the TVOE iLO4 GUI.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Launch <b>Internet Explorer</b>  Navigate to 192.168.100.5 (manufacturing default) or customer IP set during installation.	
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Internet Explorer may display a warning message regarding the Security Certificate.	

Appendix D 1: TVOE iLO4 GUI Access

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Select the option to <b>Continue to the website (not recommended)</b></p>	
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Log in to the iLO4</p>	
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>The iLO4 Home page is displayed.</p>	
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Click on <b>Launch</b> to start the PMAC iLO4 CLI</p>	

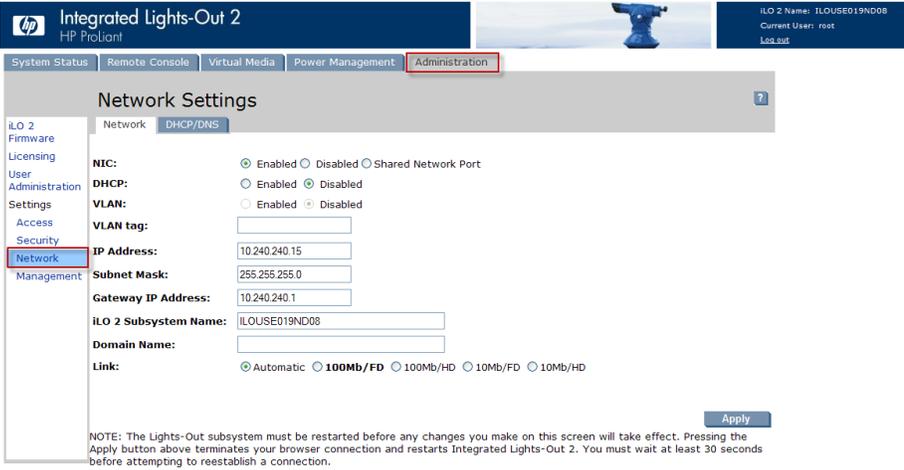
## Appendix E: Changing the TVOE iLO Address

### Appendix E 1: Changing the TVOE iLO Address

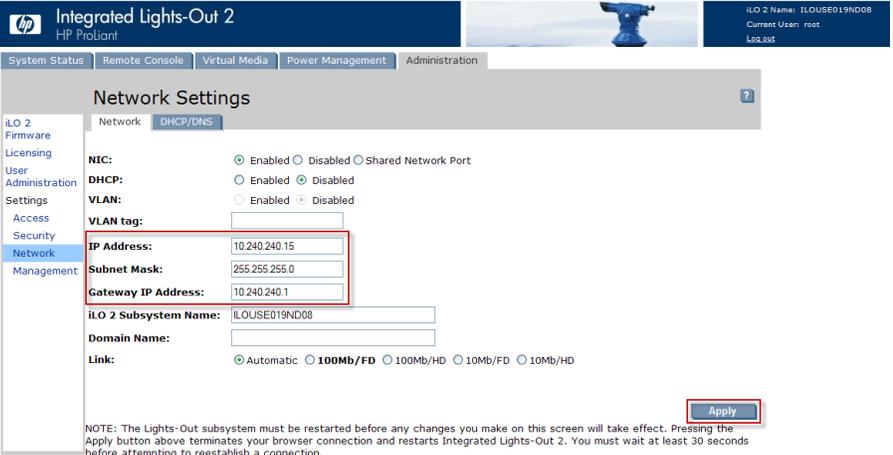
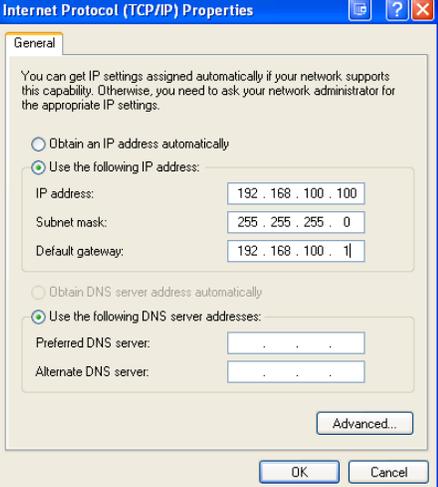
This procedure will set the IP address of the TVOE iLO to the customer's network so that it can be accessed by Oracle support.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Connect to the TVOE iLO GUI using the instructions in <b>Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 GUI Access</b></p>	
<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Click the <b>Administration</b> tab.</p> <p>Under <b>Settings</b> in the left column click on <b>Network</b>.</p>	

**Appendix E 1: Changing the TVOE iLO Address**

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Change the <b>IP Address, Subnet Mask and Gateway IP Address</b> to the values supplied in the IP Site Survey for the TVOE iLO.</p> <p>Select <b>Apply</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You will lose access after you hit the <b>Apply</b> button.</p>	
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Reset the PC's network connection replacing the <b>Subnet Mask and Gateway</b> with those just used for the TVOE iLO. Use an appropriate <b>IP address</b> for this subnet.</p>	
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Connect to the TVOE iLO GUI using the instructions in <b>Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 GUI Access</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> Use the IP address entered in <b>Step 3</b></p>	

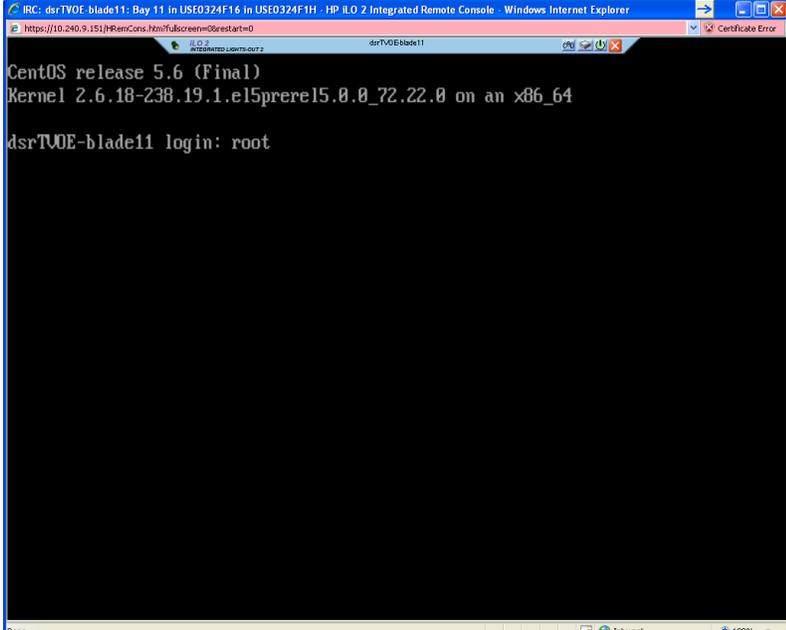
## Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access

### Appendix F 1: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access

This procedure describes how to log into the PMAC/NOAM/SOAM console from ILO.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Log in as <b>admusr</b> on the TVOE server hosting the NOAM using either ILO or SSH to the TVOE server's XMI or Mgmt. address</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "JRC: dsrTVOE-blade11: Bay 11 in US10324F16 in US10324F1H - HP iLO 2 Integrated Remote Console - Windows Internet Explorer". The address bar shows "https://10.240.9.151/HPremCons.htm?Fullscreen=0&amp;restart=0". The main content area displays a terminal window with the following text: "CentOS release 5.6 (Final)", "Kernel 2.6.18-238.19.1.el5prere15.0.0_72.22.0 on an x86_64", and "dsrTVOE-blade11 login: root".</p>

**Appendix F 1: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>		<p>On the TVOE host, execute the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;">\$sudo virsh list</pre> <p>This will produce a listing of currently running virtual machines.</p> <pre style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto;">[root@dsrTVOE-blade11 ~]# virsh list  Id Name                State -----   4 DSR_NOAMP            running [root@dsrTVOE-blade11 ~]# _</pre> <p>Find the VM name for your DSR NOAM and note its ID number in the first column.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the VM state is not listed as “running” or you do not find a VM you configured for your NOAM at all, then halt this procedure and contact Oracle Customer Support.</p>
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Connect to console of the VM using the VM number obtained in Step 2.</p>	<p>On the TVOE host, execute:.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;">\$sudo virsh console &lt;DSRNOAM-VMID&gt;</pre> <p>Where <b>DSRNOAM-VMID</b> is the VM ID you obtained in <b>Step 2</b>:</p> <pre style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto;">Connected to domain DSR_NOAMP Escape character is ^]  CentOS release 5.6 (Final) Kernel 2.6.18-238.19.1.el5prere15.0.0_72.22.0 on an x86_64 hostname1322840832 login: _</pre> <p>You are now connected to the DSR NOAMs console.</p> <p>If you wish to return to the TVOE host, you can exit the session by pressing <b>CTRL + ]</b></p>

## Appendix G: List of Frequently used Time Zones

Table 4 Time Zones

Time Zone Value	Description	Universal Time Code (UTC) Offset
America/New_York	Eastern Time	UTC-05
America/Chicago	Central Time	UTC-06
America/Denver	Mountain Time	UTC-07
America/Phoenix	Mountain Standard Time - Arizona	UTC-07
America/Los_Angeles	Pacific Time	UTC-08
America/Anchorage	Alaska Time	UTC-09
Pacific/Honolulu	Hawaii	UTC-10
Africa/Johannesburg		UTC+02
America/Mexico_City	Central Time - most locations	UTC-06
Africa/Monrovia		UTC+00
Asia/Tokyo		UTC+09
America/Jamaica		UTC-05
Europe/Rome		UTC+01
Asia/Hong_Kong		UTC+08
Pacific/Guam		UTC+10
Europe/Athens		UTC+02
Europe/London		UTC+00
Europe/Paris		UTC+01
Europe/Madrid	mainland	UTC+01
Africa/Cairo		UTC+02
Europe/Copenhagen		UTC+01
Europe/Berlin		UTC+01
Europe/Prague		UTC+01
America/Vancouver	Pacific Time - west British Columbia	UTC-08
America/Edmonton	Mountain Time - Alberta, east British Columbia & westSaskatchewan	UTC-07
America/Toronto	Eastern Time - Ontario - most locations	UTC-05
America/Montreal	Eastern Time - Quebec - most locations	UTC-05
America/Sao_Paulo	South & Southeast Brazil	UTC-03
Europe/Brussels		UTC+01
Australia/Perth	Western Australia - most locations	UTC+08
Australia/Sydney	New South Wales - most locations	UTC+10
Asia/Seoul		UTC+09
Africa/Lagos		UTC+01
Europe/Warsaw		UTC+01
America/Puerto_Rico		UTC-04
Europe/Moscow	Moscow+00 - west Russia	UTC+04
Asia/Manila		UTC+08
Atlantic/Reykjavik		UTC+00
Asia/Jerusalem		UTC+02

## Appendix H: Application NetBackup Client Installation Procedures

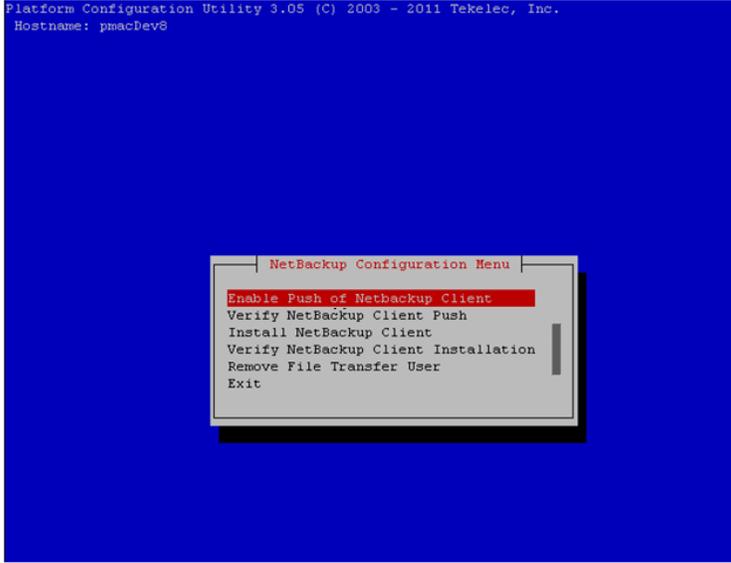
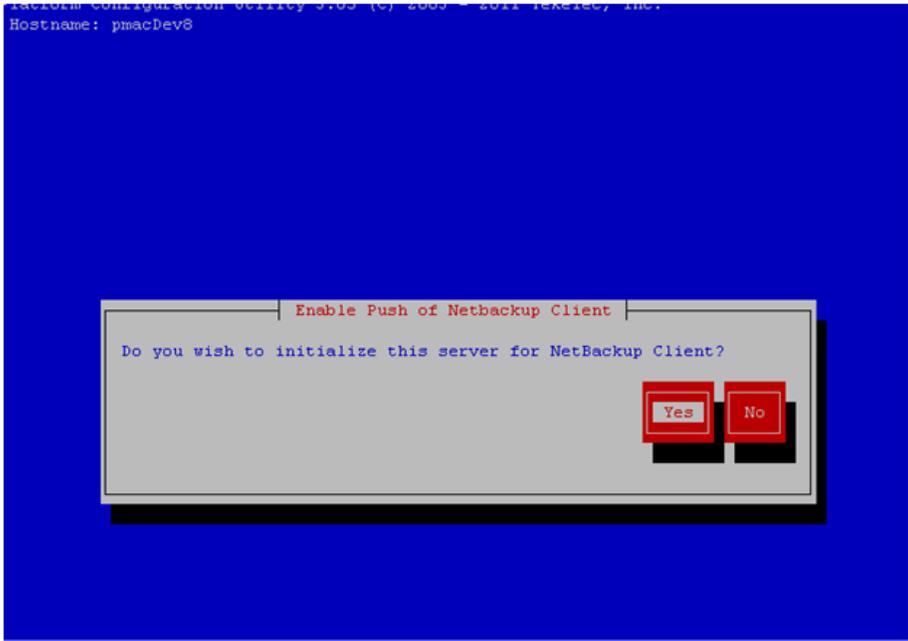
NetBackup is a utility that allows for management of backups and recovery of remote systems. The NetBackup suite is for the purpose of supporting Disaster Recovery at the customer site. The following procedures provides instructions for installing and configuring the NetBackup client software on an application server in two different ways, first using platcfg and second using nbAutoInstall (push Configuration)

### Appendix H.1: NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL USING PLATCFG

#### Appendix H 1: Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

<b>S T E P #</b>	This procedure explains the Netbackup installation using platcfg  <b>Prerequisites:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Application server platform installation has been completed.</li> <li>• Site survey has been performed to determine the network requirements for the application server, and interfaces have been configured.</li> <li>• NetBackup server is available to copy, sftp, the appropriate NetBackup Client software to the application server.</li> <li>• Execute Appendix A.3 of [7]</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Execute the following procedure to switch/migrate to having netBackup installed via platcfg instead of using NBAutoInstall (<i>Push Configuration</i>)</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Application server iLO:</b> Login	Login and launch the integrated remote console SSH to the application Server (PMAC or NOAM) as <b>admusr</b> using the management network for the PMAC or XMI network for the NOAM.

**Appendix H 1: Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)**

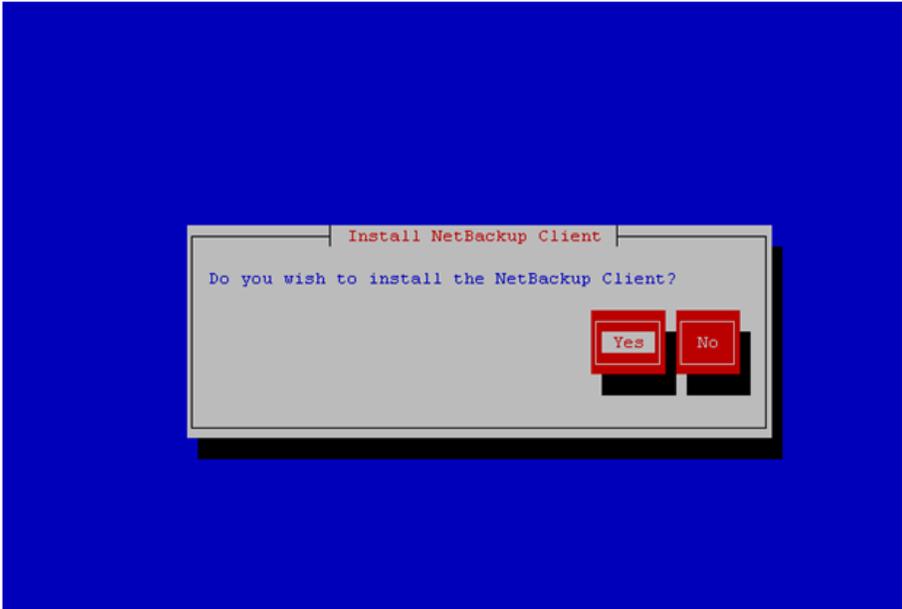
<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>                  Navigate to NetBackup Configuration</p>	<p>Configure NetBackup Client on application server</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup -&gt; Configuration</b></p> 
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>                  Enable Push of NetBackup Client</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Enable Push of NetBackup Client</b></p> 

**Appendix H 1: Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)**

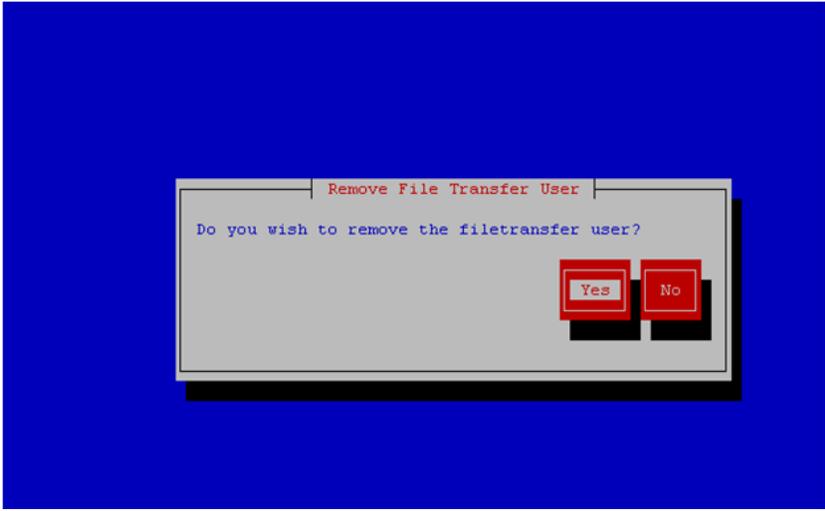
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Application server iLO:</b> Verify NetBackup Client software push is enabled.	<p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Verify NetBackup Client Push</b></p>  <pre>Platform Configuration Utility 3.05 (C) 2003 - 2011 Tekelec, Inc. Hostname: pmacDev8 Verify NetBackup Client Environment [OK] - User acct set up: netbackup [OK] - User netbackup shell set up: /usr/bin/rssh [OK] - Home directory: /home/rssh/home/netbackup [OK] - Tmp directory: /home/rssh/tmp [OK] - Tmp directory perms: 1777</pre> <p>Verify list entries indicate <b>OK</b> for NetBackup client software environment. Select <b>Exit</b> to return to NetBackup Configuration menu.</p>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------



**Appendix H 1: Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)**

<p>6 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b> Install NetBackup Client software on application server.</p>	<p>Execute the command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 555 /var/TKLC/home/rssh/tmp/client_config</pre> <p>Where <b>NETBACKUP_BIN</b> is the temporary directory where the netbackup client install programs were copied in <b>step 5</b>. The directory should look similar to the following: "/tmp/bp.XXXX/"</p> <p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Install NetBackup Client</b></p>  <p>Verify list entries indicate <b>OK</b> for NetBackup client software installation</p> <p>Select <b>Exit</b> to return to NetBackup Configuration menu</p>
---------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Appendix H 1: Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)**

<p>7  <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>                  Verify NetBackup Client software installation on the application server.</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Verify NetBackup Client Installation.</b></p>  <p>Verify list entries indicate <b>OK</b> for NetBackup Client software installation. Select <b>Exit</b> to return to NetBackup Configuration menu.</p>
<p>8  <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>                  Disable NetBackup Client software transfer to the application server.</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Remove File Transfer User</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Yes</b> to remove the NetBackup file transfer user from the application server</p>
<p>9  <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>                  Exit platform configuration utility (platcfg)</p>	<p><b>Exit</b> platform configuration utility (platcfg)</p>

**Appendix H 1: Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)**

10 **Application server iLO:**  
 Use platform configuration utility (platcfg) to modify hosts file with NetBackup server alias.

**Note:** After the successful transfer and installation of the NetBackup client software the NetBackup servers hostname can be found in the NetBackup **"/usr/opensv/netbackup/bp.conf"** file, identified by the **SERVER** configuration parameter.

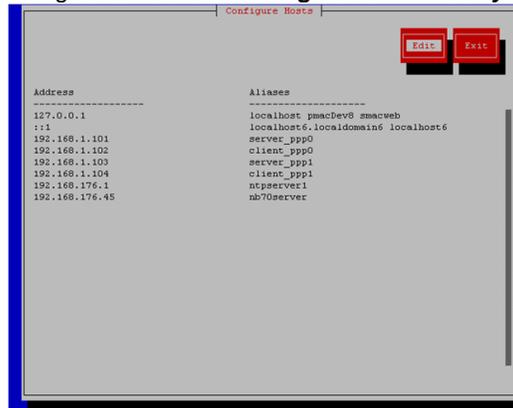
The NetBackup server hostname and IP address must be added to the application server's host's file. List NetBackup servers hostname:

```
$ sudo cat /usr/opensv/netbackup/bp.conf
SERVER = nb70server
CLIENT_NAME = pmacDev8
```

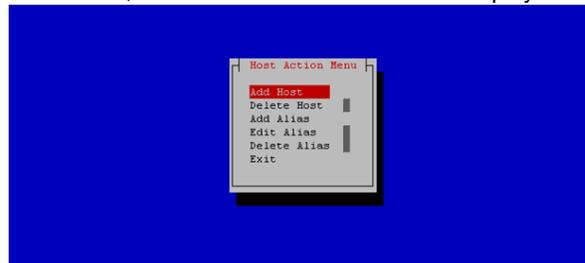
Use platform configuration utility (platcfg) to update application hosts file with NetBackup Server alias.

```
$ sudo su - platcfg
```

Navigate to **Network Configuration -> Modify Hosts File**



Select **Edit**, the **Host Action Menu** will be displayed.



Select **Add Host**, and enter the appropriate data



Select **OK**, confirm the host alias add, and exit Platform Configuration Utility

**Appendix H 1: Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)**

11 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Application server iLO:</b> Create links to NetBackup client notify scripts on application server where NetBackup expects to find them.	Copy the notify scripts from appropriate path on application server for given application:  <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo ln -s &lt;path&gt;/bpstart_notify /usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bpstart_notify  \$ sudo ln -s &lt;path&gt;/bpend_notify /usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bpend_notify</pre> <p>An example of &lt;path&gt; is "/usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin"</p>
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Appendix H.2: NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL/UPGRADE WITH NBAUTOINSTALL**

**Note:** Execute the following procedure to switch/migrate to having netBackup installed via NBAutoInstall (*Push Configuration*) instead of manual installation using platcfg

**Note:** Executing this procedure will enable TPD to automatically detect when a Netbackup Client is installed and then complete TPD related tasks that are needed for effective Netbackup Client operation. With this procedure, the Netbackup Client install (pushing the client and performing the install) is the responsibility of the customer and is not covered in this procedure.

**Appendix H 2: Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure explains the Netbackup installation with NBAUTOINSTALL</p> <p><b>Prerequisites:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Application server platform installation has been completed.</li> <li>• Site survey has been performed to determine the network requirements for the application server, and interfaces have been configured.</li> <li>• NetBackup server is available to copy, sftp, the appropriate NetBackup Client software to the application server.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If the customer does not have a way to push and install Netbackup Client, then use Netbackup Client Install/Upgrade with platcfg.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It is required that this procedure is executed before the customer does the Netbackup Client install.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Application server iLO:</b> Login	Login and launch the integrated remote console.  SSH to the application Server (PMAC or NOAM) as <i>admusr</i> using the management network for the PMAC or XMI network for the NOAM.

**Appendix H 2: Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL)**

<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>                  Enable nbAutoInstall</p>	<p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/nbAutoInstall --enable</pre>
<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>                  Create links to NetBackup client notify scripts on application server where NetBackup expects to find them.</p>	<p>Execute the following commands</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo mkdir -p /usr/openv/netbackup/bin/  \$ sudo ln -s &lt;path&gt;/bpstart_notify /usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bpstart_notify  \$ sudo ln -s &lt;path&gt;/bpend_notify /usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bpend_notify</pre> <p>Note: An example of &lt;path&gt; is "/usr/TKLC/plat/sbin"</p>
<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>                  Verify NetBackup configuration file</p>	<p>Open <b>/usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf</b> and make sure it points to the NetBackup Server using the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo vi /usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf  SERVER = nb75server CLIENT_NAME = 10.240.10.185 CONNECT_OPTIONS = localhost 1 0 2</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> Verify that the above server name matches the NetBackup Server, and verify that the CLIENT_NAME matches the hostname or IP of the local client machine, if they do not, update them as necessary.</p> <p>Edit <b>/etc/hosts</b> using the following command and add the NetBackup server:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo vi /etc/hosts  e.g.: 192.168.176.45      nb75server</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> The server will now periodically check to see if a new version of Netbackup Client has been installed and will perform necessary TPD configuration accordingly.                  At any time, the customer may now push and install a new version of Netbackup Client.</p>

**Appendix H.3: CREATE NETBACKUP CLIENT CONFIG FILE**

This procedure will copy a NetBackup Client config file into the appropriate location on the TPD based application server. This config file will allow a customer to install previously unsupported versions of NetBackup Client by providing necessary information to TPD.

**Appendix H 3: Create NetBackup Client Config File**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will copy a NetBackup Client config file into the appropriate location on the TPD based application server. This config file will allow a customer to install previously unsupported versions of NetBackup Client by providing necessary information to TPD.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b> Create NetBackup Config File</p>	<p>Create the NetBackup Client config file on the server using the contents that were previously determined. The config file should be placed in the <i>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles</i> directory and should follow the following naming conventions: NB\$ver.conf</p> <p>Where \$ver is the client version number with the periods removed. For the 7.5 client the value of \$ver would be 75 and the full path to the file would be: <i>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf</i></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The config files must start with "NB" and must have a suffix of ".conf". The server is now capable of installing the corresponding NetBackup Client. The server is now capable of installing the corresponding NetBackup Client.</p>

### Appendix H 3: Create NetBackup Client Config File

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Application server iLO:</b> Create NetBackup Config script	<p>Create the NetBackup Client config script file on the server using the contents that were previously determined. The config script file should be placed in the <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts</code> directory. The name of the NetBackup Client config script file should be determined from the contents of the NetBackup Client config file.</p> <p>As an example for the NetBackup 7.5 client the following is applicable:</p> <p><u>NetBackup Client config:</u> <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf</code></p> <p><u>NetBackup Client config script:</u> <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts/NB75</code></p> <p>Note: Change the client config and script permission by executing the following command:</p> <p>Illustrative purposes only:</p> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 555 /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf \$ sudo chmod 55 /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts/NB75</pre>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Appendix H.4: OPEN PORTS FOR NETBACKUP CLIENT SOFTWARE**

This procedure will use iptables and ip6tables (if applicable) to open the applicable ports for the NetBackup client to communicate to the NetBackup Server.

**Appendix H 4: Open ports for NetBackup Client Software**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will use iptables and ip6tables (if applicable) to open the applicable ports for the NetBackup client to communicate to the NetBackup Server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Active NOAM Server:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the active NOAM server. Login as <i>admusr</i>.</p>
<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Active NOAM Server:</b> Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software</p>	<p>Change directories to <i>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/iptables</i></p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ cd /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/iptables</pre> <p>Using “vi”, create a file named <i>60netbackup.ipt</i></p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">\$ sudo vi 60netbackup.ipt</pre> <p>Insert the following contents into the file:</p> <pre># NetBackup ports. # *filter -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 1556 -j ACCEPT -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 13724 -j ACCEPT -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 13782 -j ACCEPT</pre> <p>Now save and close the file using <b>:wq</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> If system servers are to use IPv6 networks for NetBackup client-to-server communication, then repeat this procedure to create a file named <i>60netbackup.ip6t</i>, with the same contents as shown above, in the directory <i>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/ip6tables</i>.</p>
<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Standby NOAM:</b> Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software</p>	<p>Repeat <b>Steps 1-2</b> for the standby NOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.</p>

**Appendix H 4: Open ports for NetBackup Client Software**

4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Active SOAM:</b> Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Repeat <b>Steps 1-2</b> for the active SOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Standby SOAM:</b> Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Repeat <b>Steps 1-2</b> for the standby SOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.

## Appendix I: IDIH Fast Deployment Configuration

The `fdc.cfg` file contains 8 sections. The following is a list of those sections with a short description:

Section	Description
Software Images	A list of the TVOE, TPD, and iDIH application versions.
TVOE Blade	Contains the Enclosure ID, OA addresses, location, name and Hardware type of an HP Blade.
TVOE RMS	Includes Hardware Type and ILO address of the Rack Mount Server.
Type	Management or Standalone
TVOE Configuration	Contains all ip addresses, hostname and network devices for the TVOE host.
Guest Configurations (3)	The guest sections contain network and hostname configuration for the Oracle, Mediation and Application guests.

### Software Images

Be sure to update the software images section based on software versions you intend to install. The following table outlines typical installation failures caused by incorrect software versions. Use the `"fdconfig dumpsteps -file="` command to produce output of a Fast Deployment Session.

Software Image	Element	Command Text
TVOE ISO	mgmtsrvrtvoe	IPM Server
TPD ISO	Oracle,tpd Mediation,tpd Application,tpd	IPM Server
iDIH Mediation ISO	Mgmtsrvrtvoe,configExt	Transfer File
iDIH Oracle ISO iDIH Mediation ISO iDIH Application ISO	Oracle,ora Mediation,med Application,app	Upgrade Server

**Note:** For installation, `oracleGuest-8.0.0.0.0_80.x.x-x86_64.iso` is to be used

### TVOE Blade

The TVOE Blade section should be commented out if you intend to install a Rack Mount Server. Be sure to fill out the sections properly. Enclosure ID, OA IP addresses and the Bay must be correct or the PMAC will not be able to discover the blade. Hardware profiles are different for Gen8 and Gen6. Gen6 blades profiles have fewer CPU's and Ram allocated to the Guest.

### TVOE RMS

The TVOE RMS section should be commented out if you intend to install a TVOE Blade. It contains the ILO ip address and Hardware profile. If the ILO IP address is incorrect the PMAC will not be able to discover the Rack Mount Server, server discovery must occur before the installation can begin.

## TYPE

If your IDIH system is to be collocated with a PMAC on the same TVOE host make sure “Type=Management” is not commented out. It will setup a management network instead of an xmi network and it will remove the software stanza inside of the TVOE server stanza. If you are setting up a standalone IDIH then comment out “Type=Management” which will setup an xmi bridge.

## TVOE CONFIGURATION

This section defines the hostname, network ip addresses for the TVOE bridges and it defines the network devices. You can define the devices you intend to use for bonded interfaces and the tagged bonded interfaces you intend to associate with a bridge.

Execute “cat hw\_id” or hardwareInfo” command on TVOE host to get the hardware ID for the “Hw=” parameter. **Note:** For Gen9 (Hardware ID “ProLiantDL380Gen9”), please use Gen8’s Hardware ID (“ProLiantDL380pGen8”).

## GUEST CONFIGURATION

These sections contain the hostname, IPv4 addresses, IPv4 netmask, IPv4 gateway, and IPv6 addresses. If you do not intend to configure IPv6 addresses then leave those IP addresses commented out. The IPv6 netmask is included in the IPv6 address.

Below is FDC configuration template included on the mediation ISO:

```
# Software Images
TvoeIso="TVOE-3.0.1.0.0_86.20.0-x86_64"
TpdIso="TPD.install-7.0.1.0.0_86.20.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64"
OraIso="oracleGuest-8.0.0.0.0_80.25.0-x86_64"
MedIso="mediation-8.0.0.0.0_80.25.0-x86_64"
AppIso="apps-8.0.0.0.0_80.25.0-x86_64"

# Tvoe Blade OA IP and Bay uncomment if this server is blade #EncId="1401"
#Oa1="10.250.51.197"
#Oa2="10.250.51.198"
#Bay="15F"
#Hw="ProLiantBL460cGen8"
#Hw="ProLiantBL460cGen6"

# Tvoe RMS Out of Band Management IP and Hw # Comment these lines if server is blade OobIp="10.250.34.24"
Hw="ProLiantDL380pGen8"
#Hw="SUNNETRAX4270M3"

# Comment this line out if server is standalone Type="Management"

# Tvoe Config
#
TvoeName="thunderbolt"
TvoeIp="10.250.51.8"
Mask="255.255.255.0"
Gateway="10.250.51.1"
TvoeNtp="10.250.32.10"
TvoeIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::4/64"
TvoeIp6Gw="fe80::0"
# xmi bond
XmiDev="bond0"
XmiEth="eth01,eth02"
# imi bond
ImiDev="bond1"
ImiEth="eth03,eth04"
# xmi/management
MgmtInt="bond0.3"
MgmtIntType="Vlan"
MgmtIntVlanid="3"
# imi
ImiInt="bond1.5"
ImiIntType="Vlan"
ImiIntVlanid="5"

# Oracle Guest Config
OraName="thunderbolt-ora"
OraIp="10.250.51.6"
OraMask=$Mask
OraGw=$Gateway
OraIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::5/64"
OraIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"

# Mediation Guest Config
MedName="thunderbolt-med"
MedIp="10.250.51.10"
MedMask=$Mask
MedGw=$Gateway
ImiIp="192.168.32.11"
ImiMask="255.255.255.224"
MedIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::6/64"
MedIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"
ImiIp6="2608:f0d0:1002:51::6/64"

# Application Guest Config
AppName="thunderbolt-app"
AppIp="10.250.51.11"
AppMask=$Mask
AppGw=$Gateway
AppIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::7/64"
AppIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"
```

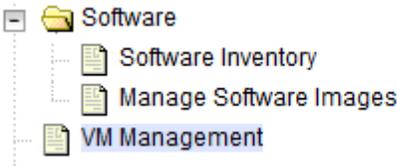
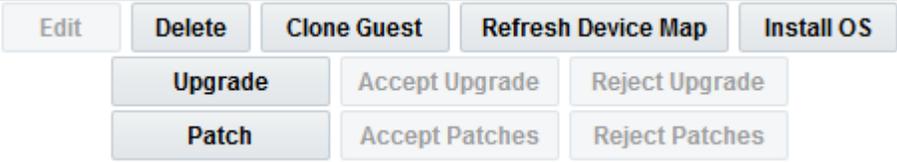
## Appendix J: IDIH External Drive Removal

This procedure should only be run if the user intends to do a fresh installation on an existing IDIH.

### Appendix J 1: IDIH External Drive Removal

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will destroy all of the data in the Oracle Database.</p> <p>Warning: Do not perform this procedure on an IDIH system unless you intend to do a fresh TVOE installation.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><code>https://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 

**Appendix J 1: IDIH External Drive Removal**

<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Delete VMs if Needed</p>	<p>Before a re-installation can be performed, the IDIH VMs must be removed first.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b></p>  <p>Select each of the IDIH VMs and select the <b>Delete</b> button.</p> 
<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the TVOE host, login as <b>admusr</b></p>
<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Verify External Drive Exists for <b>HP BL460 Blade</b></p>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for <b>HP BL460 Blade</b>:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=3 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Smart Array P410i in Slot 3 array A logicaldrive 1 (3.3 TB, RAID 1+0, OK)</pre>
<p>5 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Verify External Drive Exists for <b>HP DL380 Gen8 RMS</b></p>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for <b>HP DL380 Gen8 RMS</b>:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=2 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Smart Array P420 in Slot 2 array A logicaldrive 1 (1.1 TB, RAID 1+0, OK)</pre>

## Appendix J 1: IDIH External Drive Removal

<p>6</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>IDIH TVOE</b>  <b>HOST:</b> Verify External Drive Exists for <b>Netra X3</b></p>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for <b>Netra X3</b>:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo storcli -ldinfo -l1 -a0   head</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Adapter 0 -- Virtual Drive Information: Virtual Drive: 1 (Target Id: 1) Name          : RAID Level    : Primary-1, Secondary-0, RAID Level Qualifier-0 Size          : 1.633 TB Mirror Data   : 1.633 TB State         : Optimal Strip Size    : 64 KB</pre>
<p>7</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>IDIH TVOE</b>  <b>HOST:</b> Verify External Drive Exists for <b>HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</b></p>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for <b>HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</b>:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Smart Array P440ar in Slot 0 (Embedded)  array A      logicaldrive 1 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK)  array B      logicaldrive 2 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK)  array C      logicaldrive 3 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK)</pre>
<p>8</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>IDIH TVOE</b>  <b>HOST:</b> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>HP BL460 Blade</b></p>	<p>Execute the following command to remove the external drive and volume group for <b>HP BL460 Blade</b>:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean hpdisk --slot=3</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Called with options: hpdisk --slot=3 WARNING: This will destroy all application data on the server! Continue? [Y/N]</pre>

## Appendix J 1: IDIH External Drive Removal

<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>HP DL380 Gen8 RMS</b></p>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>HP DL380 Gen8 RMS</b>:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean hpdisk --slot=2</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Called with options: hpdisk --slot=2 WARNING: This will destroy all application data on the server! Continue? [Y/N]</pre>
<p>10</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>Netra X3 with one external disk</b></p>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>Netra X3 with one external disk</b>:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo vgs VG          #PV #LV #SN Attr   VSize  VFree external    1   1   0 wz--n-  1.63t  73.58g vgguests    1   6   0 wz--n- 538.56g 138.56g vgroot      1   6   0 wz--n-  19.00g   4.25g</pre> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external --level=scrub \$ sudo megacli -cfglddel -l1 -a0</pre>

## Appendix J 1: IDIH External Drive Removal

11 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>Netra X3 with three external disks</b>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>Netra X3 with three external disks</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo vgs VG          #PV #LV #SN Attr   VSize   VFree external1   1  1  0 wz--n- 557.86g 24.86g external2   1  1  0 wz--n- 557.86g 24.86g external3   1  1  0 wz--n- 557.86g 24.86g vgguests    1  6  0 wz--n- 538.56g 138.56g vgroot      1  6  0 wz--n-  19.00g  4.25g</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external3 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external2 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external1 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external3 --level=scrub \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external2 --level=scrub \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external1 --level=scrub</pre> <pre>[root@hellcat ~]# sudo storcli -cfglddel -l3 -a0 [root@hellcat ~]# sudo storcli -cfglddel -l2 -a0 [root@hellcat ~]# sudo storcli -cfglddel -l1 -a0</pre>
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</b>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool -- \ poolName=external2 --level=pv  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool -- \ poolName=external1 --level=pv  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm -- \ vgName=external2 --level=scrub  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm -- \ vgName=external1 --level=scrub  \$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld 3 delete \$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld 2 delete</pre>

## Appendix K: DSR Fast Deployment Configuration

The following table contains the variables that the NOAM DSR fast deployment will prompt for during NOAM deployment.

Fast Deployment Variable	Description	Value
Cabinet ID of this Enclosure? (NOAM Blade Deployment Only)	This value should match the value entered from Section “Enclosure and Blades Setup” from reference [7]	<input type="text"/>
Enclosure ID? (NOAM Blade Deployment Only)	This value should match the value entered from Section “Enclosure and Blades Setup” from reference [7]	<input type="text"/>
Bay number of the First NOAM TVOE Host (NOAM Blade Deployment Only)	This value will be the blade number of the first NOAM server. <b>Note:</b> ‘F’ MUST append the bay number (example: 8F)	<input type="text"/>
Bay number of the Second NOAM TVOE Host (NOAM Blade Deployment Only)	This value will be the blade number of the second NOAM server. <b>Note:</b> ‘F’ MUST append the bay number (example: 16F)	<input type="text"/>
iLO/iLOM IP address of the First Rack Mount Server (NOAM Rack Mount Server Deployments Only)	This value will be the iLO/iLOM IP address of the First rack mount server.  <b>Note:</b> If the NOAM is located on the same TVOE host as the PMAC, this value will be the one entered in procedure “Add Rack Mount Server to the PM&C System Inventory” from reference [7]	<input type="text"/>
iLO/iLOM IP address of the Second Rack Mount Server (NOAM Rack Mount Server Deployments Only)	This value will be the iLO/iLOM IP address of the First rack mount server.	<input type="text"/>
iLO/iLOM username of the First Rack Mount Server (NOAM Rack Mount Server Deployments Only)	This value will be the iLO/iLOM username of the first rack mount server.  <b>Note:</b> If the NOAM is located on the same TVOE host as the PMAC, this value will be the one entered in procedure “Add Rack Mount Server to the PM&C System Inventory” from reference [7]	<input type="text"/>
iLO/iLOM username of the Second Rack Mount Server (NOAM Rack Mount Server Deployments Only)	This value will be the iLO/iLOM username of the second rack mount server.	<input type="text"/>
iLO/iLOM password of the First Rack Mount Server (NOAM Rack Mount Server Deployments Only)	This value will be the iLO/iLOM password of the first rack mount server.  <b>Note:</b> If the NOAM is located on the same TVOE host as the PMAC, this value will be the one entered in procedure “Add Rack Mount Server to the PM&C System Inventory” from reference [7]	<input type="text"/>

iLO/iLOM password of the Second Rack Mount Server (NOAM Rack Mount Server Deployments Only)	This value will be the iLO/iLOM password of the second rack mount server.	<input type="text"/>
Hostname for the First TVOE Host	This value will be the hostname of the first TVOE host	<input type="text"/>
Hostname for the Second TVOE Host	This value will be the hostname of the second TVOE host	<input type="text"/>
XMI IP address of the First TVOE Host (NOAM Blade Deployment Only)	This value will be the XMI IP address of the first TVOE Host.	<input type="text"/>
XMI IP address of the Second TVOE Host (NOAM Blade Deployment Only)	This value will be the XMI IP address of the second TVOE Host.	<input type="text"/>
PMAC VM Name of the First NOAM	This value will be the VM name (visible from <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b> on the PMAC.)	<input type="text"/>
PMAC VM Name of the Second NOAM	This value will be the VM name (visible from <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b> on the PMAC.)	<input type="text"/>
First NOAM Hostname	This value will be the first NOAM hostname.	<input type="text"/>
Second NOAM Hostname	This value will be the second NOAM hostname.	<input type="text"/>
XMI IP address of the First NOAM	This value will be the XMI IP address of the first NOAM. <b>Note:</b> this value will be used to access the NOAM GUI for configuration	<input type="text"/>
Customer Provided NTP Server #1 Customer Provided NTP Server #2 Customer Provided NTP Server #3	Customer provided NTP source. Refer to Figure 2 of [7].	NTP Server #1: <input type="text"/> NTP Server #2: <input type="text"/> NTP Server #3: <input type="text"/>
XMI bond interface	This value will be the XMI bond interface. Example: bond0.3	<input type="text"/>
XMI VLAN ID	This value will be the XMI VLAN ID. Example: 3	<input type="text"/>
IMI bond interface	This value will be the IMI bond interface. Example: bond0.4	<input type="text"/>
IMI VLAN ID	This value will be the IMI VLAN ID. Example: 4	<input type="text"/>

<p>Management bond interface (NOAM Rack Mount Server Deployments Only)</p>	<p>This value will be the Management bond interface. Example: bond0.2</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If NOAMs are located on the same TVOE host as the PMAC, this value MUST match what was configured in Section “TVOE Network Configuration” of reference [7].</p>	<p>_____</p>
<p>Management VLAN ID (NOAM Rack Mount Server Deployments Only)</p>	<p>This value will be the Management VLAN ID. Example: 2</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If NOAMs are located on the same TVOE host as the PMAC, this value MUST match what was configured in Section “TVOE Network Configuration” of reference [7].</p>	<p>_____</p>
<p>xmi Network IP Subnet Mask</p>	<p>This value will be the xmi IP network subnet mask.</p>	<p>_____</p>
<p>Management Network IP subnet mask</p>	<p>This value will be the management IP network subnet mask.</p>	<p>_____</p>
<p>xmi Network IP default gateway</p>	<p>This value will be the default gateway of the xmi network.</p>	<p>_____</p>
<p>Management Network IP default gateway</p>	<p>This value will be the default gateway of the management network.</p>	<p>_____</p>

## Appendix L: Growth/De-Growth

For scenarios where growth or de-growth is required, it may be necessary to delete or re-shuffle VM guests, SDS, and DSR servers. Appendix L.1 will explain how to add individual VMs and add various DSR/SDS servers. Appendix L.2 will explain how to delete individual VMs and move or remove various DSR/SDS servers.

### Appendix L.1: Growth

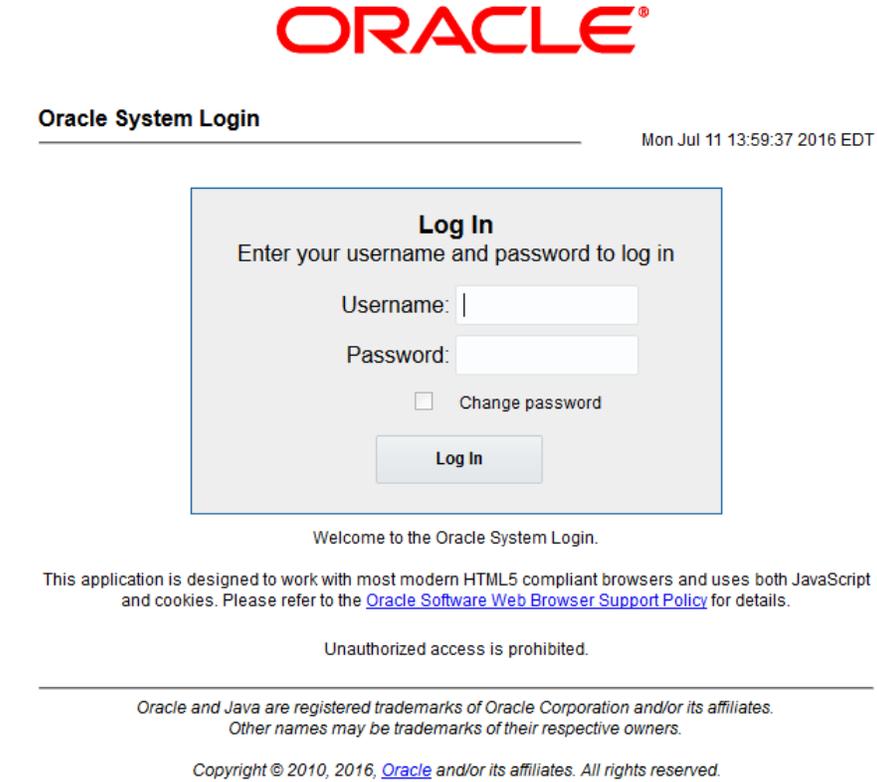
For growth scenarios where it is necessary to add DSR servers, the following sequence of steps should be followed:

Step	Procedure(s)
Perform Backups	Appendix L.1.1
Perform system health check	Appendix L.1.2
Identify Servers which will be affected by the Growth: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DR-NOAM</li> <li>• SOAM Spares</li> <li>• MP (SBR, SS7MP, IPFE)</li> </ul>	
Add new servers  Create and Configure the VMs on new servers (SOAM spare and DR-NOAMs Only)	Appendix L.1.3
Configure Servers in new VM locations	NOAM/DR-NOAM: Appendix L.1.4  SOAM: Appendix L.1.5  MP: Appendix L.1.6
Post Growth Health Check	Appendix L.1.7
Post Growth Backups	Appendix L.1.8

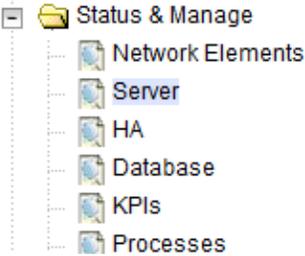
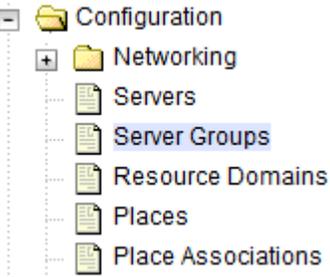
**Appendix L.1.1 Perform Backups**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will reference steps to backup all necessary items before a growth scenario.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup TVOE</b>	Backup all TVOE host configurations by executing <b>Procedure 40</b>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup PMAC</b>	Backup the PMAC application by executing <b>Procedure 41</b>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup NOAM/SOAM databases</b>	Backup the NOAM and SOAM Databases by executing <b>Procedure 42</b> and <b>Procedure 43</b>

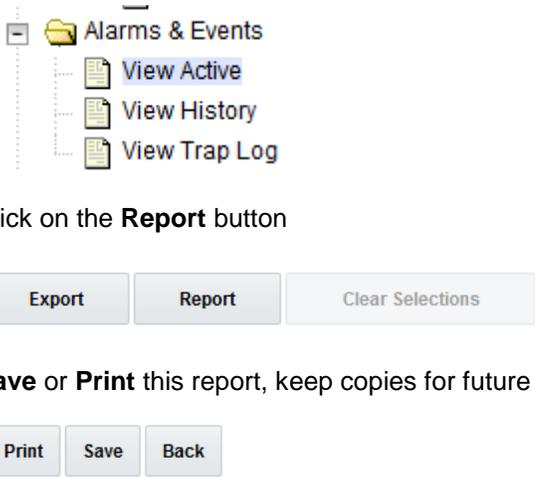
**Appendix L.1.2 Perform Health Check**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide steps verify system status and log all alarms.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>The screenshot shows the Oracle System Login interface. At the top is the Oracle logo in red. Below it, the text 'Oracle System Login' is displayed on the left, and the date 'Mon Jul 11 13:59:37 2016 EDT' is on the right. A central box contains a 'Log In' form with fields for 'Username' and 'Password', a 'Change password' checkbox, and a 'Log In' button. Below the form, there is a 'Welcome to the Oracle System Login.' message, a note about browser compatibility, a 'Unauthorized access is prohibited.' warning, and footer text regarding trademarks and copyright.</p> </div>

**Appendix L.1.2 Perform Health Check**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify Server Status</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Server</b></p>  <p>Verify all Server Status is Normal (Norm) for: Alarm (Alm), Database (DB), Replication Status, and Processes (Proc).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Appl State</th> <th>Alm</th> <th>DB</th> <th>Reporting Status</th> <th>Proc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enabled</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Do not proceed to with Growth/De-Growth if any of the above states are not Norm. If any of these are not Norm, corrective action should be taken to restore the non-Norm status to Norm before proceeding with the feature activation.</p> <p>If the Alarm (Alm) status is not Norm but only Minor alarms are present, it is acceptable to proceed. If there are Major or Critical alarms present, these alarms should be analyzed prior to proceeding with the feature activation. The activation may be able to proceed in the presence of certain Major or Critical alarms</p>	Appl State	Alm	DB	Reporting Status	Proc	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm
Appl State	Alm	DB	Reporting Status	Proc																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify Server Configuration</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Verify the configuration data is correct for your network.</p>																									

**Appendix L.1.2 Perform Health Check**

<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Log Current Alarms</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Alarms &amp; Events -&gt; View Active</b></p>  <p>Click on the <b>Report</b> button</p> <p><b>Save or Print</b> this report, keep copies for future reference.</p>
<p>5 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Repeat For SOAM</p>	<p>Repeat <b>Steps 1-4</b> for the SOAM</p>

**Appendix L.1.3 Adding a new Server/VMs**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide steps to add a new rack mount server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance..</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Add/Configure Additional Servers</b></p>	<p>Follow the sections below to install and configure additional servers:</p> <p><u>DR-NOAMs</u>: <b>Section 4.2.1</b> Execute DSR Fast Deployment for DR-NOAMs</p> <p><u>Spare SOAMs</u>: <b>Procedure 11</b></p> <p><u>MPs</u>: Insert blade in desired location</p>
<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Add/Configure New VMs</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Create new virtual Machines for the Spare SOAMs by following <b>Procedure 12</b></li> <li>2. Install TPD and DSR Software by following <b>Procedure 13</b></li> </ol>

**Appendix L.1.4 Growth: DR-NOAM**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will reference steps to configure a DR-NOAM on the new virtual machine for VM Growth scenarios.</p> <p><b>Prerequisites:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NEW Virtual Machine Created</li> <li>• TPD/DSR software installed</li> </ul> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance..</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure the DR-NOAM	<p>Configure the DR-NOAM by executing the steps referenced in the following procedures:</p> <p><u>DSR DR-NOAM: Section 4.2.2</u> Pairing DR-NOAMs(<b>Section 4.2.3</b> Install NetBackup Client (Optional)</p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>DR-NOAM:</b> Activate Optional Features (DSR Only)	<p>If there are any optional features currently activated, the feature activation procedures will need to be run again. Refer to <b>Section 3.3</b> Optional Features</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP:</b> Execute the key revocation Script on the Active NOAM (RADIUS Only)	<p><b>If the RADIUS key has never been revoked, skip this step (If RADIUS was never configured on any site in the network, the RADIUS key would have most likely never been revoked. Check with your system administrator)</b></p> <p>Execute the following commands to execute the key revocation script on active NOAM server to copy key file to new NOAM server created:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/dsr/bin/ \$ ./sharedKrevo -synchronize -server &lt;new_NOAM_hostname&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> Key transfer successful output should be given.</p> </div>

**Appendix L.1.5 Growth: SOAM spare (PCA Only)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will reference steps to configure an SOAM spare on the new virtual machine for VM growth scenarios.</p> <p><b>Prerequisites:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NEW Virtual Machine Created</li> <li>• TPD/DSR software installed</li> </ul> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure the SOAM spare</p>	<p>Configure the SOAM spare by executing the steps referenced in the following procedures:</p> <p><u>DSR SOAM spare:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Procedure 15</li> <li>• Procedure 16</li> <li>• Procedure 17 (Steps 1,4,6, and 9)</li> </ul>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Activate Optional Features</p>	<p>If there are any optional features currently activated, the feature activation procedures will need to be run again. Refer to <b>Section 3.3</b> Optional Features.</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP:</b> Execute the key revocation Script on the Active NOAM (RADIUS)</p>	<p><b>If the RADIUS key has never been revoked, skip this step (If RADIUS was never configured on any site in the network, the RADIUS key would have most likely never been revoked. Check with your system administrator)</b></p> <p>Execute the following commands to execute the key revocation script on active NOAM server to copy key file to new SOAM server created:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/dsr/bin/ \$ ./sharedKrevo -synchronize -server &lt;new_SOAM_hostname&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> Key transfer successful output should be given.</p> </div>

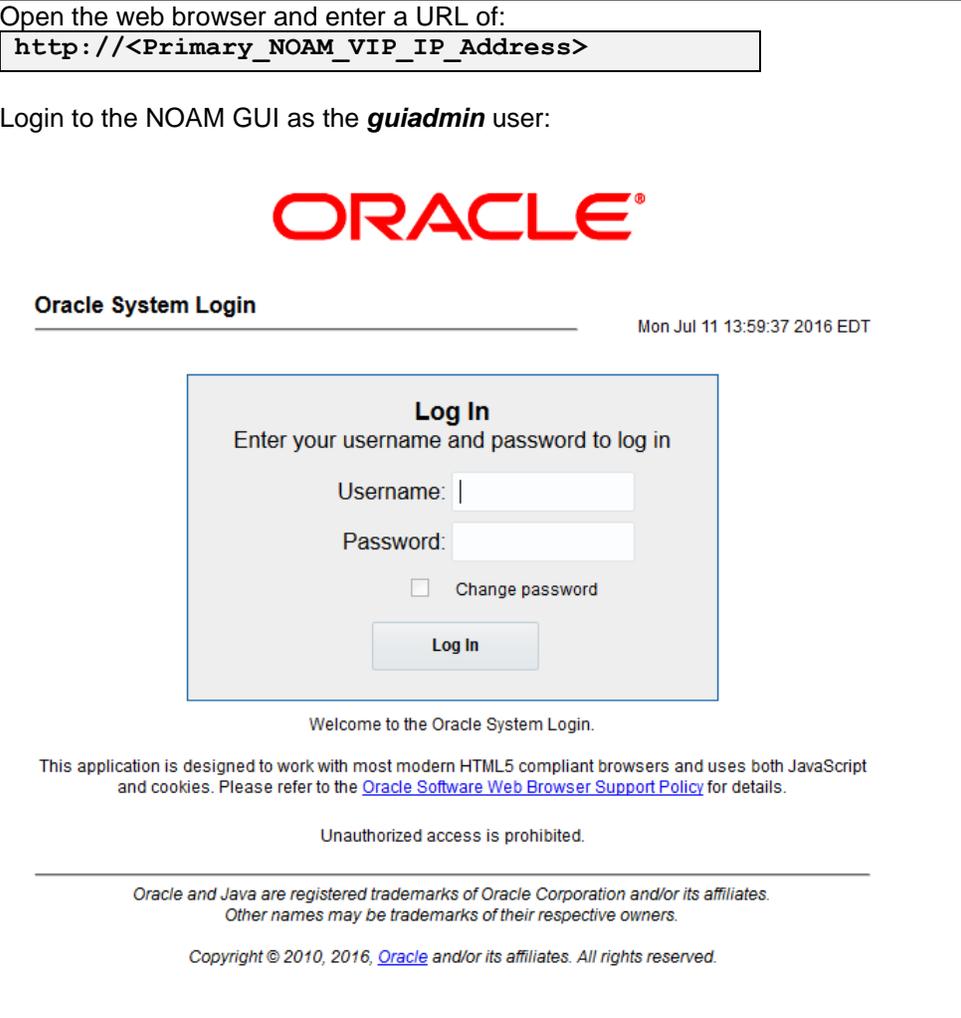
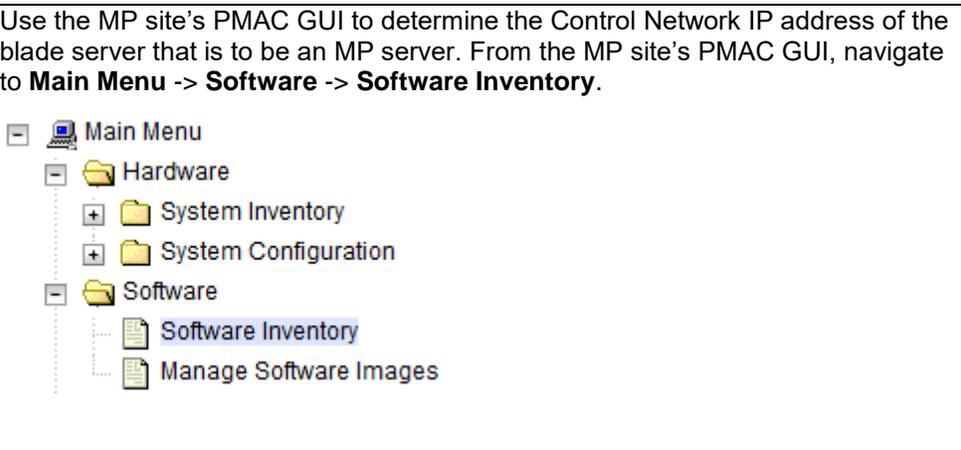
**Appendix L.1.6 Growth: MP**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will reference steps to configure an MP on the new virtual machine for growth scenarios.</p> <p><b>Prerequisites:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TPD/DSR software installed</li> </ul> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure the MP</p>	<p>Configure the MP/DP by executing the steps referenced in the following procedures:</p> <p><u>DSR MP</u>: <b>Procedure 20</b> (Steps 1-2, 7-14, 15-17(Optional))</p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP:</b> Execute the key revocation Script on the Active NOAM (RADIUS)</p>	<p><b>If the RADIUS key has never been revoked, skip this step (If RADIUS was never configured on any site in the network, the RADIUS key would have most likely never been revoked. Check with your system administrator)</b></p> <p>Execute the following commands to execute the key revocation script on active NOAM server to copy key file to new MP server created:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/dsr/bin/ \$ ./sharedKrevo -synchronize -server &lt;new_MP_hostname&gt;</pre> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> Key transfer successful output should be given.</p>

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure should be executed <b>ONLY</b> to configure an MP on the new virtual machine for growth scenarios for <b>7.x to 8.x upgraded system</b></p> <p><b>Prerequisites:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TPD/DSR software installed</li> </ul> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p>

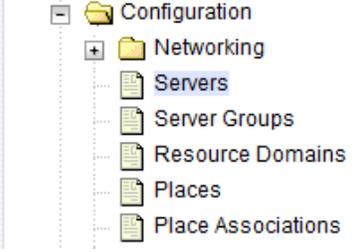
**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

		<p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <input type="text" value="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;"/></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>				
<p>2 □</p>	<p><b>PMAC:</b> Exchange SSH keys between MP site's local PMAC and the MP server</p>	<p>Use the MP site's PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the blade server that is to be an MP server. From the MP site's PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Enc:103 Bay:1F</td> <td>192.168.1.207</td> <td>LG-MP2</td> <td>TPD (x86_64)</td> </tr> </table> <p>Note the IP address for an MP server.</p> <p>Login to the MP site's PMAC terminal as the <i>admusr</i>.</p>	Enc:103 Bay:1F	192.168.1.207	LG-MP2	TPD (x86_64)
Enc:103 Bay:1F	192.168.1.207	LG-MP2	TPD (x86_64)			

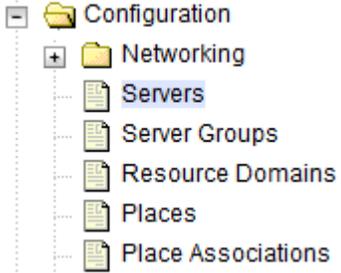
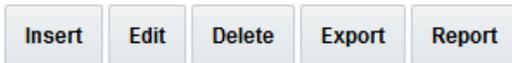
**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

		<p>From a terminal window connection on the MP site's PMAC as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Exchange SSH keys for <b>admusr</b> between the PMAC and the MP blade server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the MP blade server.</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;MP_Control_Blade_IP Address&gt;</pre> <p>When prompted for the password, enter the password for the <b>admusr</b> user of the MP server.</p>															
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP server (Part 1)</p>	<p>Before creating the MP blade server, first identify the hardware profile</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> In the following step, you will select the profile that matches your MP physical hardware and enclosure networking environment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must go through the process of identifying the enclosure switches, mezzanine cards and Ethernet interfaces of the network prior and blade(s) used before selecting the profile.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Number of Enclosure Switches (Pairs)?</th> <th>Bonded Signaling Interfaces?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1-Pair</td> <td>1</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2-Pair</td> <td>2</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3-Pair-bonded</td> <td>3</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3-Pair-un-bonded</td> <td>3</td> <td>No</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> If none of the above profiles properly describe your MP server blade, then you will have to create your own in a text editor (<b>See Figure 7 of Appendix A:</b> Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles) and copy it into the <b>/var/TKLC/appworks/profiles/</b> directory of the active NOAM server, the standby NOAM server, and both the DR NOAM servers (<i>if applicable</i>).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> After transferring the above file, set the proper file permission by executing the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">\$ sudo chmod 777 /var/TKLC/appworks/profiles/&lt;profile name&gt;</pre> <p>Make note of the profile used here, as it will be used in server creation in the following step.</p>	Profile Name	Number of Enclosure Switches (Pairs)?	Bonded Signaling Interfaces?	1-Pair	1	Yes	2-Pair	2	Yes	3-Pair-bonded	3	Yes	3-Pair-un-bonded	3	No
Profile Name	Number of Enclosure Switches (Pairs)?	Bonded Signaling Interfaces?															
1-Pair	1	Yes															
2-Pair	2	Yes															
3-Pair-bonded	3	Yes															
3-Pair-un-bonded	3	No															
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Servers</b></p>															

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

<p>server (Part 2)</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  </div> <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the new MP server into servers table.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px; display: flex; gap: 5px;"> <span>Insert</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Delete</span> <span>Export</span> <span>Report</span> </div> <p>Fill out the following values:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;  <b>Role:</b> MP  <b>Network Element:</b> [Choose Network Element]  <b>Hardware Profile:</b> Select the profile that matches your MP physical hardware and enclosure networking environment from <b>step 8</b>.  <b>Location:</b> &lt;enter an optional location description&gt;</p> <p>The interface configuration form will now appear.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>OAM Interfaces [At least one interface is required.]:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Network</th> <th style="width: 30%;">IP Address</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Interface</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>XMI (10.240.213.0/24)</td> <td>10.240.213.44</td> <td>bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IMI (169.254.1.0/24)</td> <td>169.254.1.6</td> <td>bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> If networks have been configured previously but are not required on the server, simply remove the populated network IP from the IP Address field and this device will not be created on the server.</p> <p>Enter the IP addresses for all networks. Select the correct bond or interface. Ensure the correct bond and VLAN tagging (if required) is selected.</p> <p><b>Optional:</b> If dedicated network for SBR replication has been defined, enter the SBR replication IP address. Select the proper bond or interface, and <b>select the VLAN checkbox if VLAN tagging is required.</b></p>	Network	IP Address	Interface	XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	10.240.213.44	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)	IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	169.254.1.6	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)
Network	IP Address	Interface								
XMI (10.240.213.0/24)	10.240.213.44	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)								
IMI (169.254.1.0/24)	169.254.1.6	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)								
<p>5 <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP server (Part 3)</p>	<p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 60%;">NTP Server</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)&gt;</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)&gt;</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>&lt;MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address&gt;</td> <td>No</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	No	<MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address>	No	
NTP Server	Preferred?									
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes									
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	No									
<MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address>	No									

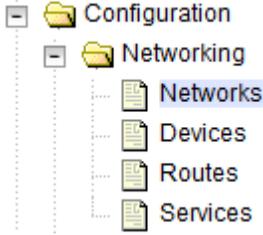
## Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)

		<p><b>Note:</b> For multiple enclosure deployments, prefer the SOAM TVOE Host that is located in the same enclosure as the MP Server.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in to finish MP server insertion.</p>
6	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Export the Configuration</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p>  <p>From the GUI screen, select the MP server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> 
7	<p><b>NOAM VIP:</b> Copy Configuration File to MP Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the NOAM VIP as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Use the <b>awpushcfg</b> utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the NOAM to the MP server, using the Control network IP address for the MP server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like <code>"TKLCConfigData.&lt;hostname&gt;.sh"</code>.</p> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the management network address from the PMAC.</li> <li>• Username: Use <b>admusr</b></li> <li>• Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the MP server).</li> <li>• Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in <b>step 9</b></li> </ul>
8	<p><b>MP Server:</b> Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Configured</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the MP server console by establishing an ssh session from the NOAM VIP terminal console.</p> <pre>\$ ssh admusr@&lt;MP_Control_IP&gt;</pre> <p>Login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file:</p>

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

	Server	<pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> <p>Reboot the server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>Proceed to the next step once the Server finished rebooting, The server is done rebooting once the login prompt is displayed.</p>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>MP Server:</b> Verify Server Health	<p>After the reboot, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following command as super-user on the server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck</pre> <pre>Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>MP Server:</b> Delete Auto-Configured Default Route on MP and Replace it with a Network Route via the XMI Network-Part1 (Optional)	<p><b>Note:</b> THIS STEP IS <b>OPTIONAL</b> AND SHOULD ONLY BE EXECUTED IF YOU PLAN TO CONFIGURE A <b>DEFAULT ROUTE</b> ON YOUR MP THAT USES A SIGNALING (XSI) NETWORK INSTEAD OF THE XMI NETWORK.</p> <p>(Not executing this step will mean that a default route will not be configurable on this MP and you will have to create separate network routes for each signaling network destination.)</p> <p>Using the iLO facility, log into the MP as the <i>admusr</i> user. (<i>Alternatively, you can log into the site's PMAC then SSH to the MP's control address.</i>)</p> <p>Determine &lt;XMI_Gateway_IP&gt; from your SO site network element info.</p> <p>Gather the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt;NO_XMI_Network_Address&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;NO_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;DR_NO_XMI_Network_Address&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;DR_NO_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Address&gt;</li> </ul>

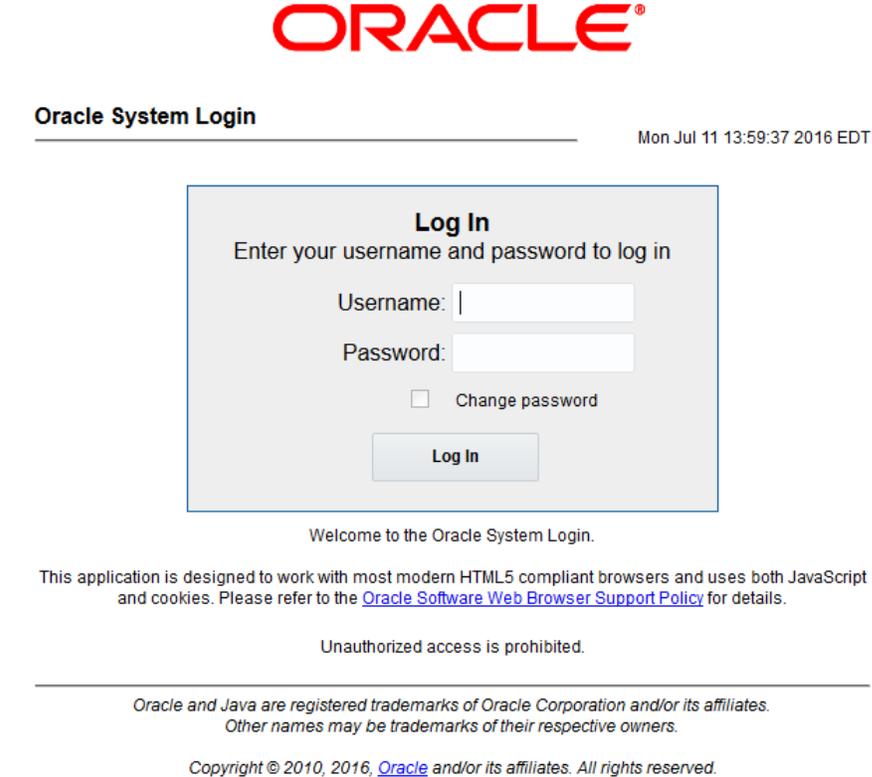
## Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You can either consult the XML files you imported earlier, or go to the NO GUI and view these values from the <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network Elements</b> screen.</p>  <p>Proceed to the next step to modify the default routes on the MP servers.</p>
11	<p><b>MP Server:</b> Delete Auto-Configured Default Route on MP and Replace it with a Network Route via the XMI Network-Part2 (Optional)</p>	<p>After gathering the network information from step 15, proceed with modifying the default routes on the MP server.</p> <p>Establish a connection to the MP server, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Create network routes to the NO's XMI(OAM) network:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If your NOAM XMI network is exactly the same as your MP XMI network, then you should skip this command and only configure the DR NO route.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;NO_Site_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO_Site_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt;</pre> <p>Create network routes to the DR NO's XMI(OAM) network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;DR-NO_Site_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;&lt;DR-NO_Site_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt;</pre> <p>Create network routes to the Management Server TVOE XMI(OAM) network for NTP:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Network_Address&gt; --netmask=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt;</pre> <p><b>(Optional)</b> If Sending SNMP traps from individual servers, create host routes to customer SNMP trap destinations on the XMI network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=host --address=&lt;Customer_NMS_IP&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre>

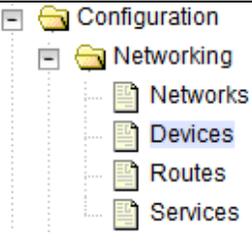
**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

		<pre>--device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt;</pre> <p>(Repeat for any existing customer NMS stations)</p> <p><b>Delete the existing default route:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Login to the PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI</li> <li>2. Navigate to <b>Configuration-&gt;Networking-&gt;Networks</b></li> <li>3. Select the specific SO tab.</li> <li>4. Select the XMI network and click 'Unlock'. Click OK to confirm</li> <li>5. Go to <b>Configuration-&gt;Networking-&gt;Routes</b></li> <li>6. Select the Specific MP XMI route and click 'Delete'.</li> <li>7. Click OK to confirm.</li> <li>8. Repeat the above steps for all required MPs to delete the XMI routes</li> <li>9. Select <b>Configuration-&gt;Networking-&gt;Networks</b></li> <li>10. Select the respective SOAM tab.</li> <li>11. Select the XMI network and click 'Lock'.</li> </ol> <p>Click OK to confirm</p>
<p>12</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>MP Server:</b> Verify connectivity</p>	<p>After steps 10 and 11 have been executed, verify network connectivity.</p> <p>Establish a connection to the MP server, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Ping active NO XMI IP address to verify connectivity:</p> <pre>\$ ping &lt;ACTIVE_NO_XMI_IP_Address&gt;</pre> <pre>PING 10.240.108.6 (10.240.108.6) 56(84) bytes of data.</pre> <pre>64 bytes from 10.240.108.6: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.342 ms</pre> <pre>64 bytes from 10.240.108.6: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.247 ms</pre> <p><b>(Optional) Ping Customer NMS Station(s):</b></p> <pre>\$ ping &lt;Customer_NMS_IP&gt;</pre> <pre>PING 172.4.116.8 (172.4.118.8) 56(84) bytes of data.</pre> <pre>64 bytes from 172.4.116.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.342 ms</pre> <pre>64 bytes from 172.4.116.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.247 ms</pre> <p>If you do not get a response, then verify your network configuration. If you continue to get failures then halt the installation and contact Oracle customer support.</p>
<p>13</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Repeat for remaining MP at all sites</b></p>	<p><b>Repeat</b> the above steps from 1 through 12 for all remaining MP blades (SS7-MP, DA-MP, and IPFE).</p>
<p>14</p>	<p><b>Configure</b></p>	<p>Execute the following procedures:</p>

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

<input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>MP</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Procedure 21</b> Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA/DCA ONLY)</li> <li>• <b>Procedure 22</b> Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)</li> <li>• <b>Procedure 23</b> Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only)</li> </ul>
<p><b>The following steps (15-23) are to configure the Signaling Interfaces for the newly added MPs</b></p>		
<p>15</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> <p>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>
<p>16</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Make Signaling Devices Configurable (Unbonded, non-VLAN signaling)</b></p>	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if you are using un-bonded, non-VLAN tagged Ethernet interfaces for signaling traffic.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Devices</b></p>

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

interfaces only)	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;">  <p>You should see several tabs each representing a blade in the system. Click on the tab representing the newly added MP Blade.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; Networking -&gt; Devices</b></p> <hr/> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; border-bottom: 1px solid gray; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <span>NOAM1</span> <span>NOAM2</span> <span>SOAM1</span> <span>SOAM2</span> <span style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">DAMP1</span> </div> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Device Name</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Device Type</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Device Options</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>eth0</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>eth1</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>You should see a list of network devices installed on the MP.</p> <p>Select all Ethernet devices that will be used as un-bonded signaling interfaces and have “Discovered” as their Configuration Status.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 20%;">Device Name</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Device Type</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Device Options</th> <th style="width: 20%;">IP Interface (Network)</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Configuration Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>eth1</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes</td> <td>192.168.2.205 (INTERNAL1M) fe80::f816:3eff:fe13:eaaf (/64)</td> <td>Deployed</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0f0ff;"> <td>eth2</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes</td> <td></td> <td style="border: 2px solid red; border-radius: 50%;">Discovered</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0f0ff;"> <td>eth3</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes</td> <td></td> <td style="border: 2px solid red; border-radius: 50%;">Discovered</td> </tr> <tr> <td>eth0</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes</td> <td>192.168.1.205 (INTERNALXMI) fe80::f816:3eff:feb3:1380 (/64)</td> <td>Deployed</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Next, press the Take Ownership button.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center; gap: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <span>Insert</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Delete</span> <span>Report</span> <span>Report All</span> <span style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">Take Ownership</span> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin-bottom: 10px;">                 Converts a discovered device to a configured one.             </div> <p>After a brief moment, the selected devices should now show a Configuration Status of “Configured”.</p> </div>	Device Name	Device Type	Device Options	eth0	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes	eth1	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes	Device Name	Device Type	Device Options	IP Interface (Network)	Configuration Status	eth1	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes	192.168.2.205 (INTERNAL1M) fe80::f816:3eff:fe13:eaaf (/64)	Deployed	eth2	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes		Discovered	eth3	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes		Discovered	eth0	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes	192.168.1.205 (INTERNALXMI) fe80::f816:3eff:feb3:1380 (/64)	Deployed
Device Name	Device Type	Device Options																																	
eth0	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes																																	
eth1	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes																																	
Device Name	Device Type	Device Options	IP Interface (Network)	Configuration Status																															
eth1	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes	192.168.2.205 (INTERNAL1M) fe80::f816:3eff:fe13:eaaf (/64)	Deployed																															
eth2	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes		Discovered																															
eth3	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes		Discovered																															
eth0	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes	192.168.1.205 (INTERNALXMI) fe80::f816:3eff:feb3:1380 (/64)	Deployed																															
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure the Signaling</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Devices</b></p>																																	

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

<p>Interfaces of the newly added MP</p>	<div> </div> <p>You should see several tabs each representing a blade in the system. Click on the tab representing the newly added MP Blade.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; Networking -&gt; Devices</b></p> <div> </div> <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device Name</th> <th>Device Type</th> <th>Device Options</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>eth0</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>eth1</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Refer to the following table to determine which steps to execute next based on the number of enclosure switch pairs and whether Bonded Interfaces are used</p> <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Number of Enclosure Switch Pairs</th> <th>Bonded Interface</th> <th>Steps to Execute</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>17 &amp; 18</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 or 3</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>19 &amp; 20</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 or 3</td> <td>No</td> <td>21 &amp; 22</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Device Name	Device Type	Device Options	eth0	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes	eth1	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes	Number of Enclosure Switch Pairs	Bonded Interface	Steps to Execute	1	N/A	17 & 18	2 or 3	Yes	19 & 20	2 or 3	No	21 & 22
Device Name	Device Type	Device Options																				
eth0	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes																				
eth1	Ethernet	MTU = 1500 bootProto = none onboot = yes																				
Number of Enclosure Switch Pairs	Bonded Interface	Steps to Execute																				
1	N/A	17 & 18																				
2 or 3	Yes	19 & 20																				
2 or 3	No	21 & 22																				
<p>18</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP (1 pair of enclosure switches)</p> <p>Click on <b>Insert</b></p> <div> </div> <p>The following screen should be displayed. Verify that the server name on the top corresponds to the MP.</p>																					

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

**Main Menu: Configuration -> Networking -> Devices [Insert]**

---

Info\* ▼

**Insert Device on STI-DAMP-3**

Field	Value	Description
Device Type	<input type="radio"/> Bonding <input checked="" type="radio"/> Vlan <input type="radio"/> Alias	Select the device type. It cannot be changed after
Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default =
Boot Protocol	None ▼	Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range :
MTU Setting	1500	The MTU setting. [Default = 1500 bytes per packe attempting to increase the MTU above the default devices, typically a VLAN device on a bonded or vi parent device. In addition, the switches would hav
Base Device	<input checked="" type="radio"/> bond0 <input type="radio"/> bond1 <input type="radio"/> bond2 <input type="radio"/> eth01 <input type="radio"/> eth02 <input type="radio"/> eth11 <input type="radio"/> eth12 <input type="radio"/> eth21 <input type="radio"/> eth22	The base device for a Vlan device. Vlan devices re

**Device Type:** VLAN  
**Start on Boot:** verify checkbox is selected.  
**Boot Protocol:** verify that it is set to None  
**Base Device:** bond0

Click on the **IP Interfaces** tab as shown below.

**IP Interfaces**

IP Address List: Add IP Interface

Select the first Signaling Network from the drop down menu.

If configuring an **IPv4**, then enter the **IPv4** address.

If configuring an **IPv6** address and **IPv6 auto-configuration** is enabled on your signaling network, and the MPs are in active/standby configuration, then there's no need to enter an IP address, it will be assigned automatically.

If configuring an **IPv6** address and **IPv6 auto-configuration** is disabled, or the MPs are in multi-active mode:

If an **IPv4** already exists, click on **Add IP Interface** and enter the **IPv6** address.

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

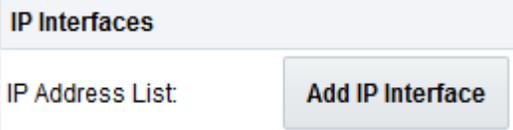
		<p>If an <b>IPv4</b> doesn't exist, simply enter the <b>IPv6</b> address.</p> <p>Click on OK at the bottom of the screen.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <span>Ok</span> <span>Apply</span> <span>Cancel</span> </div> <p>To add additional Signaling Interfaces, click on Insert again and repeat this step, otherwise continue with the next step.</p> <p>Skip the next 2 steps and continue to step 21</p>
<p>19 □</p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 1 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches with bonded interfaces)</p>	<p><i>If bonding is already present, skip this step</i></p> <p>Click on <b>Insert</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <span>Insert</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Delete</span> <span>Report</span> <span>Report All</span> <span>Take Ownership</span> </div> <p>The following screen should be displayed. Verify that the server name on the top corresponds to the MP.</p> <p>The following screen should be displayed. Verify that the blade name on the top corresponds to the MP.</p>

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

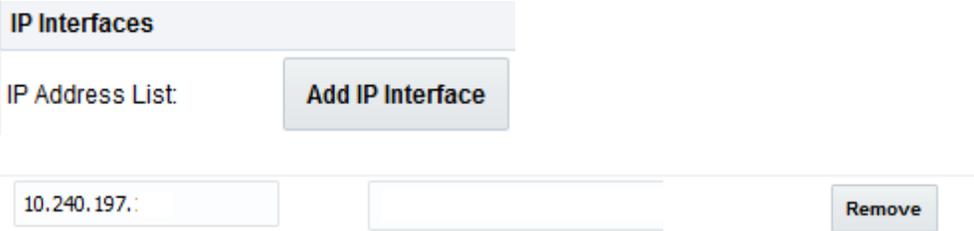
Insert Device on STI-DAMP-3		
Field	Value	Description
Device Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Bonding <input type="radio"/> Vlan <input type="radio"/> Alias	Select the
Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Start the c
Boot Protocol	None ▼	Select the
MTU Setting	1500	The MTU default va value of th
Monitoring Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> MII <input type="radio"/> ARP	Choose a
Primary	None ▼	Select the
Monitoring Interval	100	The MII r
Upstream Delay	200	The MII u
Downstream Delay	200	The MII r
Base Devices	<input type="checkbox"/> eth01 <input type="checkbox"/> eth02 <input type="checkbox"/> eth11 <input type="checkbox"/> eth12 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> eth21 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> eth22	The base

**Device Type:** Bonding  
**Device Monitoring:** MII  
**Start on Boot:** Verify that the checkbox is selected.  
**Boot Protocol:** Verify that it is set to None  
**Base Device:** Select the ports that correspond to the signaling enclosure switches. (e.g. if the signaling switches are in Slots 3 and 4, you would select eth11 and eth12)

**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

		<p>Click on OK at the bottom of the screen.</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> ARP Device Monitoring while using IPv6 ONLY is not supported</p>
<p>20 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 2 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches with bonded interfaces)</p>	<p><i>If bonding is already present, skip this step</i></p> <p>Continued from the previous step</p> <p>Next click Insert again. The same screen as above with appear, select the following:</p> <p><b>Device Type:</b> VLAN  <b>Start on Boot:</b> verify that the checkbox is selected.  <b>Boot Protocol:</b> verify that it is set to None  <b>Base Device:</b> bond1.</p> <p>Now Click on the <b>Add IP Interface</b> tab as shown below.</p>  <p>Select the first <b>Signaling Network</b> from the drop down menu.</p> <p>Enter the IP address that corresponds to the IPv4 or IPv6 interface.</p> <p>Click on <b>OK</b> at the bottom of the screen.</p>  <p>To add additional <b>Signaling Interfaces</b>, Select <b>Insert</b> again and repeat this step, otherwise continue with the next step.</p>
<p>21 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 1 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches without</p>	<p>Select the appropriate Ethernet interface and click <b>Edit</b>.</p> 

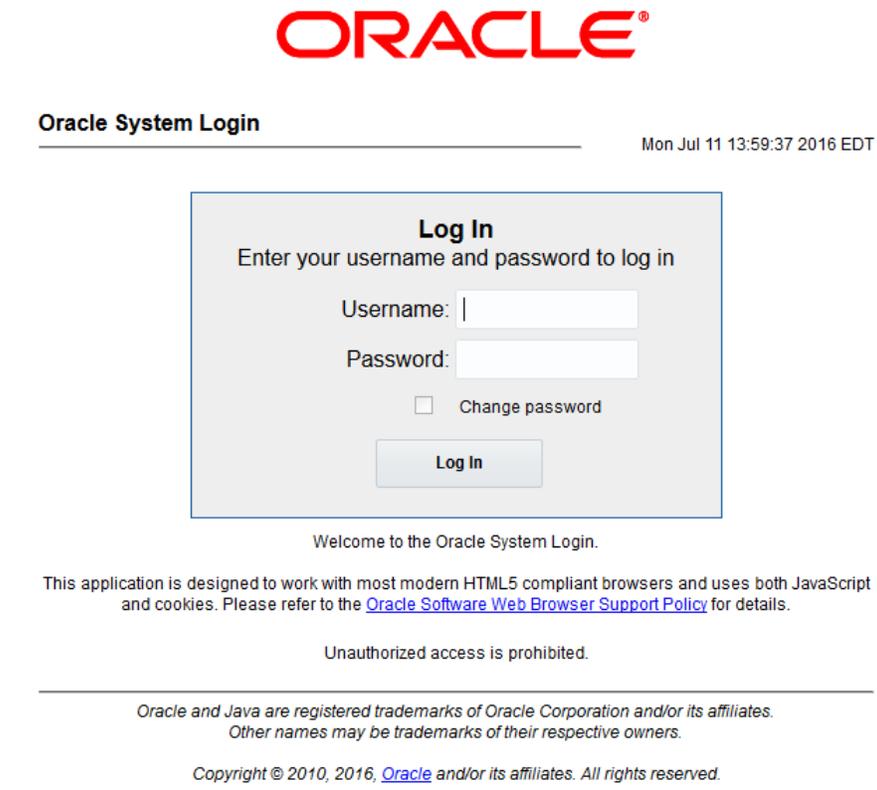
**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

	bonded interfaces)	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Device Type</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet  <input type="radio"/> Bonding  <input type="radio"/> Vlan  <input type="radio"/> Alias                 </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Start On Boot</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Boot Protocol</td> <td>None ▼</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MTU Setting</td> <td>1500</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Continue to next step</p>	Field	Value	Device Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet <input type="radio"/> Bonding <input type="radio"/> Vlan <input type="radio"/> Alias	Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Boot Protocol	None ▼	MTU Setting	1500
Field	Value											
Device Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet <input type="radio"/> Bonding <input type="radio"/> Vlan <input type="radio"/> Alias											
Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable											
Boot Protocol	None ▼											
MTU Setting	1500											
22	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b>                  Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 2 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches without bonded interfaces)</p>	<p><b>Start on Boot:</b> Verify that the checkbox is selected.</p> <p><b>Boot Protocol:</b> verify that it is set to None</p> <p>Now Click on the <b>Add IP Interface</b> button as shown below.</p>  <p>Select the first <b>Signaling Network</b> from the drop down menu.</p> <p>Enter the IP address that corresponds to the IPv4 or IPv6 interface.</p> <p>Click on <b>OK</b> at the bottom of the screen.</p> <p>Now repeat this step to configure the second signaling interface (eth22).</p>										
23	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b>                  Configure the Interfaces of the other MPs</p>	<p>Repeat this procedure to configure the signaling devices of all other MPs</p>										

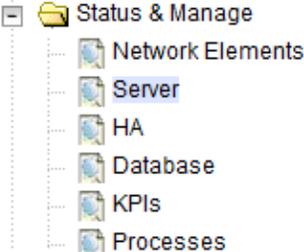
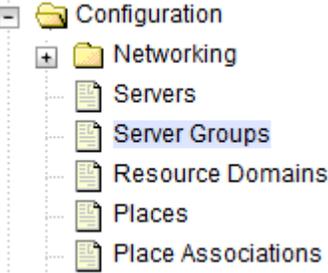
**Appendix L.1.6.1 Growth: MP (For 7.x to 8.x upgraded system)**

	added, if any.	
--	----------------	--

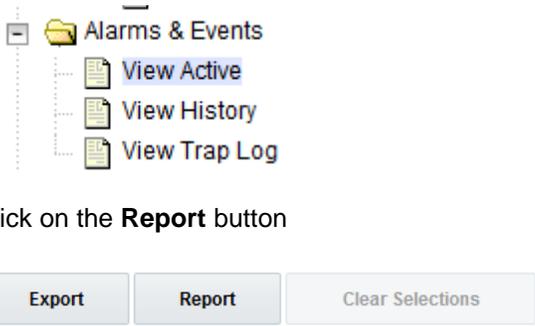
**Appendix L.1.7 Post Growth Health Check**

<b>S T E P #</b>		<p>This procedure will provide steps verify system status and log all alarms after Growth.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>The screenshot shows the Oracle System Login interface. At the top is the Oracle logo. Below it is the text 'Oracle System Login' and the date 'Mon Jul 11 13:59:37 2016 EDT'. A central box titled 'Log In' contains the text 'Enter your username and password to log in'. There are input fields for 'Username:' and 'Password:'. Below the password field is a checkbox labeled 'Change password' and a 'Log In' button. Below the login box, it says 'Welcome to the Oracle System Login.' and 'This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.' At the bottom, it states 'Unauthorized access is prohibited.' and includes copyright information: 'Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.'</p> </div>

**Appendix L.1.7 Post Growth Health Check**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify Server Status</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Server</b></p>  <p>Verify all Server Status is Normal (Norm) for: Alarm (Alm), Database (DB), Replication Status, and Processes (Proc).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Appl State</th> <th>Alm</th> <th>DB</th> <th>Reporting Status</th> <th>Proc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enabled</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Appl State	Alm	DB	Reporting Status	Proc	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm
Appl State	Alm	DB	Reporting Status	Proc																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify Server Configuration</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Verify the configuration data is correct for your network.</p>																									

**Appendix L.1.7 Post Growth Health Check**

<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Log Current Alarms</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Alarms &amp; Events -&gt; View Active</b></p>  <p>Click on the <b>Report</b> button</p> <p><b>Save or Print</b> this report, keep copies for future reference.</p>  <p>Compare this alarm report with those gathered in procedure <b>Appendix L.1.2</b></p>
<p>5 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Repeat</p>	<p>Repeat <b>Steps 1-3</b> for the SOAM</p>

**Appendix L.1.8 Post Growth Backups**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will reference steps to backup all necessary items after a growth scenario.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Backup TVOE</b></p>	<p>Backup all TVOE host configurations by executing <b>Procedure</b></p>
<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Backup PMAC</b></p>	<p>Backup the PMAC application by executing <b>Procedure 4</b></p>
<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Backup NOAM/SOAM databases</b></p>	<p>Backup the NOAM and SOAM Databases by executing <b>Procedure 4</b> and <b>Procedure 4</b></p>

## Appendix L.2: De-Growth

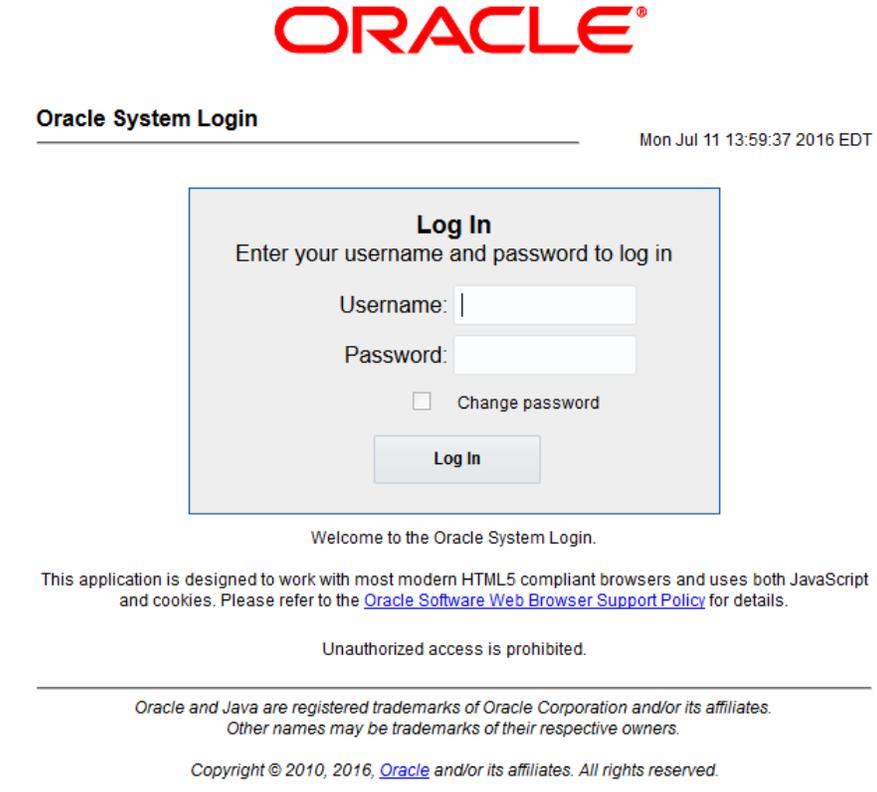
For De-growth scenarios where it is necessary to remove/delete DSR/SDS MP(SBR, SS7, IPFE) servers, the following sequence of steps should be followed:

Step	Procedure(s)
Perform Backups	Appendix L.2.1
Perform system health check	Appendix L.2.2
Identify Servers which will be affected by the De-growth: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DSR MP (SBR, SS7MP, IPFE)</li> </ul>	
Remove identified servers from Server Group	Appendix L.2.3
Shutdown and remove the identified server's VM.	Appendix L.2.4
Post De-Growth Health Check	Appendix L.2.5
Post De-Growth Backups	Appendix L.2.6

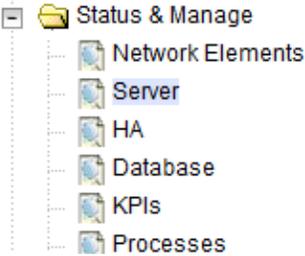
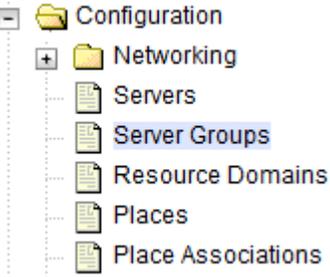
### Appendix L.2.1 Perform Backups

<b>S T E P #</b>	This procedure will reference steps to backup all necessary items before a growth scenario.	
	Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup TVOE</b>	Backup all TVOE host configurations by executing <b>Procedure 40</b>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup PMAC</b>	Backup the PMAC application by executing <b>Procedure 41</b>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup NOAM/SOAM databases</b>	Backup the NOAM and SOAM Databases by executing <b>Procedure 42</b> and <b>Procedure 43</b>

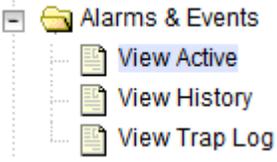
**Appendix L.2.2 Perform Health Check**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide steps verify system status and log all alarms.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>The screenshot shows the Oracle System Login page. At the top is the Oracle logo in red. Below it is the text 'Oracle System Login' and the date 'Mon Jul 11 13:59:37 2016 EDT'. A central box contains a 'Log In' form with fields for 'Username' and 'Password', a 'Change password' checkbox, and a 'Log In' button. Below the form is a 'Welcome to the Oracle System Login.' message, followed by a disclaimer about browser compatibility and a copyright notice at the bottom: 'Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.'</p> </div>

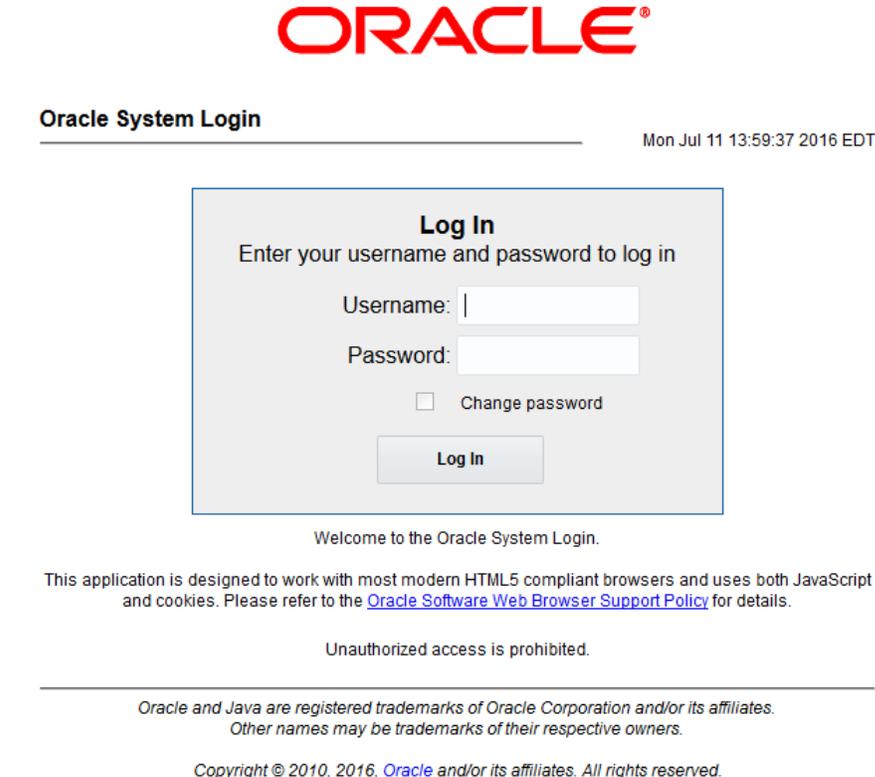
**Appendix L.2.2 Perform Health Check**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify Server Status</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Server</b></p>  <p>Verify all Server Status is Normal (Norm) for: Alarm (Alm), Database (DB), Replication Status, and Processes (Proc).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Appl State</th> <th>Alm</th> <th>DB</th> <th>Reporting Status</th> <th>Proc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enabled</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Do not proceed to with Growth/De-Growth if any of the above states are not Norm. If any of these are not Norm, corrective action should be taken to restore the non-Norm status to Norm before proceeding with the feature activation.</p> <p>If the Alarm (Alm) status is not Norm but only Minor alarms are present, it is acceptable to proceed. If there are Major or Critical alarms present, these alarms should be analyzed prior to proceeding with the feature activation. The activation may be able to proceed in the presence of certain Major or Critical alarms</p>	Appl State	Alm	DB	Reporting Status	Proc	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm
Appl State	Alm	DB	Reporting Status	Proc																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify Server Configuration</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Verify the configuration data is correct for your network.</p>																									

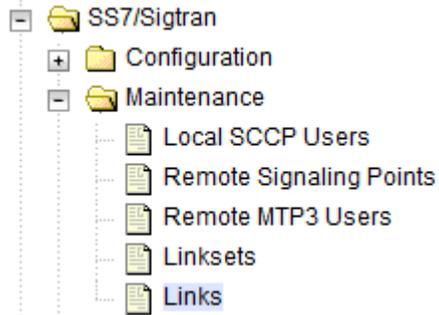
**Appendix L.2.2 Perform Health Check**

<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Log Current Alarms</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Alarms &amp; Events -&gt; View Active</b></p>  <p>Click on the <b>Report</b> button</p>  <p><b>Save</b> or <b>Print</b> this report, keep copies for future reference.</p> 
<p>5 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Repeat For SOAM</p>	<p>Repeat <b>Steps 1-4</b> for the SOAM</p>

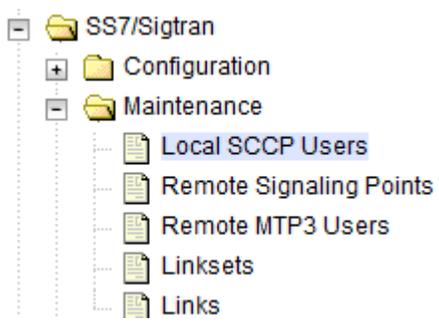
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>Once the server's that will be deleted have been identified, the server will first need to be removed from its server group.</p> <p>The following procedure will provide steps to remove a server from a server group.</p> <p><b>Warning:</b> It is recommended that no more than one server from each server group be removed from a server group at a time.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

<p>2</p> <p>☐</p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Disable SS7-MP Links</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; SS7/Sigtran -&gt; Maintenance -&gt; Links</b></p>  <p><b>Disable</b> the associated links of the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th rowspan="2">Link Name</th> <th rowspan="2">Link Set</th> <th rowspan="2">MP Server Hostname</th> <th rowspan="2">Admin State</th> <th colspan="2">Operational</th> <th rowspan="2">MP Server HA Status</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Status</th> <th>Reason</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L1</td> <td>LS1</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP 1</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Active</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L10</td> <td>LS10</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP 2</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Active</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L11</td> <td>LS11</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP 1</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Active</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L12</td> <td>LS12</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP 2</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Active</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L13</td> <td>LS13</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP 1</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Active</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	Link Name	Link Set	MP Server Hostname	Admin State	Operational		MP Server HA Status	Status	Reason	ZombieSOAM	L1	LS1	ZombieSS7MP 1	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active	ZombieSOAM	L10	LS10	ZombieSS7MP 2	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active	ZombieSOAM	L11	LS11	ZombieSS7MP 1	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active	ZombieSOAM	L12	LS12	ZombieSS7MP 2	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active	ZombieSOAM	L13	LS13	ZombieSS7MP 1	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active
Signaling Network Element Name	Link Name	Link Set						MP Server Hostname	Admin State		Operational		MP Server HA Status																																							
			Status	Reason																																																
ZombieSOAM	L1	LS1	ZombieSS7MP 1	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active																																													
ZombieSOAM	L10	LS10	ZombieSS7MP 2	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active																																													
ZombieSOAM	L11	LS11	ZombieSS7MP 1	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active																																													
ZombieSOAM	L12	LS12	ZombieSS7MP 2	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active																																													
ZombieSOAM	L13	LS13	ZombieSS7MP 1	Disabled	Down	Disabled	Active																																													

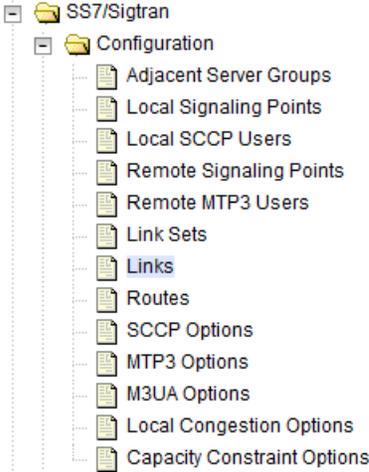
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

3	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Disable SS7-MP SCCP Users</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; SS7/Sigtran -&gt; Maintenance -&gt; Local SCCP Users</b></p>  <p><b>Disable</b> the associated local SCCP users of the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th rowspan="2">SSN</th> <th colspan="2">Local Signaling Point</th> <th rowspan="2">Application Name</th> <th rowspan="2">SSN Status</th> <th rowspan="2">Up/Down Since</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Point Code</th> <th>SS7 Domain</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>248</td> <td>100-100-100</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>MAPIWF</td> <td style="background-color: red;">Disabled</td> <td>2016-08-10 13:06:31 EDT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>249</td> <td>111-111-111</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>MAPIWF</td> <td style="background-color: red;">Disabled</td> <td>2016-08-10 13:06:54 EDT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>250</td> <td>1-100-1</td> <td>ITUI</td> <td>MAPIWF</td> <td style="background-color: red;">Disabled</td> <td>2016-08-10 13:07:09 EDT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>251</td> <td>1-101-1</td> <td>ITUI</td> <td>MAPIWF</td> <td style="background-color: red;">Disabled</td> <td>2016-08-10 13:07:17 EDT</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	SSN	Local Signaling Point		Application Name	SSN Status	Up/Down Since	Point Code	SS7 Domain	ZombieSOAM	248	100-100-100	ANSI	MAPIWF	Disabled	2016-08-10 13:06:31 EDT	ZombieSOAM	249	111-111-111	ANSI	MAPIWF	Disabled	2016-08-10 13:06:54 EDT	ZombieSOAM	250	1-100-1	ITUI	MAPIWF	Disabled	2016-08-10 13:07:09 EDT	ZombieSOAM	251	1-101-1	ITUI	MAPIWF	Disabled	2016-08-10 13:07:17 EDT
Signaling Network Element Name	SSN	Local Signaling Point			Application Name	SSN Status				Up/Down Since																													
		Point Code	SS7 Domain																																				
ZombieSOAM	248	100-100-100	ANSI	MAPIWF	Disabled	2016-08-10 13:06:31 EDT																																	
ZombieSOAM	249	111-111-111	ANSI	MAPIWF	Disabled	2016-08-10 13:06:54 EDT																																	
ZombieSOAM	250	1-100-1	ITUI	MAPIWF	Disabled	2016-08-10 13:07:09 EDT																																	
ZombieSOAM	251	1-101-1	ITUI	MAPIWF	Disabled	2016-08-10 13:07:17 EDT																																	

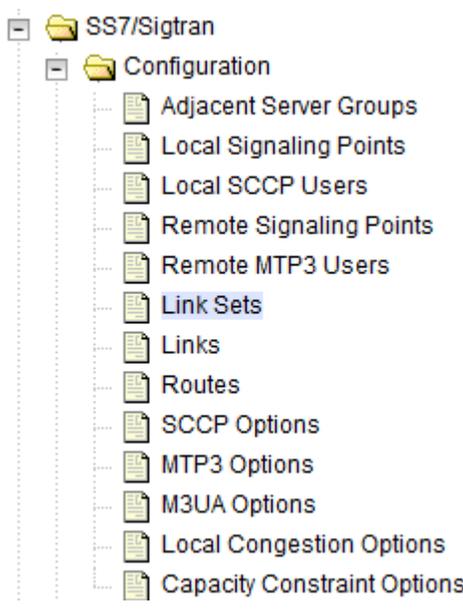
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

4	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Delete SS7-MP Routes</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; SS7/Sigtran -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Routes</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[-] SS7/Sigtran                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[-] Configuration                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adjacent Server Groups</li> <li>Local Signaling Points</li> <li>Local SCCP Users</li> <li>Remote Signaling Points</li> <li>Remote MTP3 Users</li> <li>Link Sets</li> <li>Links</li> <li><b>Routes</b></li> <li>SCCP Options</li> <li>MTP3 Options</li> <li>M3UA Options</li> <li>Local Congestion Options</li> <li>Capacity Constraint Options</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </div> <p><b>Delete</b> the associated routes of the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th>SS7 Domain</th> <th>Remote Point Code</th> <th>Link Set</th> <th>Adjacent Point Code</th> <th>Relative Cost</th> <th>Route Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>200-200-200</td> <td>LS1</td> <td>200-200-200</td> <td>20</td> <td>R1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>200-200-200</td> <td>LS2</td> <td>200-200-200</td> <td>20</td> <td>R2</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0f0ff;"> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>201-201-201</td> <td>LS3</td> <td>201-201-201</td> <td>20</td> <td>R3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>201-201-201</td> <td>LS4</td> <td>201-201-201</td> <td>20</td> <td>R4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>202-202-202</td> <td>LS5</td> <td>202-202-202</td> <td>20</td> <td>R5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>202-202-202</td> <td>LS6</td> <td>202-202-202</td> <td>20</td> <td>R6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>202-202-202</td> <td>LS7</td> <td>202-202-202</td> <td>20</td> <td>R7</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	SS7 Domain	Remote Point Code	Link Set	Adjacent Point Code	Relative Cost	Route Name	ZombieSOAM	ANSI	200-200-200	LS1	200-200-200	20	R1	ZombieSOAM	ANSI	200-200-200	LS2	200-200-200	20	R2	ZombieSOAM	ANSI	201-201-201	LS3	201-201-201	20	R3	ZombieSOAM	ANSI	201-201-201	LS4	201-201-201	20	R4	ZombieSOAM	ANSI	202-202-202	LS5	202-202-202	20	R5	ZombieSOAM	ANSI	202-202-202	LS6	202-202-202	20	R6	ZombieSOAM	ANSI	202-202-202	LS7	202-202-202	20	R7
Signaling Network Element Name	SS7 Domain	Remote Point Code	Link Set	Adjacent Point Code	Relative Cost	Route Name																																																				
ZombieSOAM	ANSI	200-200-200	LS1	200-200-200	20	R1																																																				
ZombieSOAM	ANSI	200-200-200	LS2	200-200-200	20	R2																																																				
ZombieSOAM	ANSI	201-201-201	LS3	201-201-201	20	R3																																																				
ZombieSOAM	ANSI	201-201-201	LS4	201-201-201	20	R4																																																				
ZombieSOAM	ANSI	202-202-202	LS5	202-202-202	20	R5																																																				
ZombieSOAM	ANSI	202-202-202	LS6	202-202-202	20	R6																																																				
ZombieSOAM	ANSI	202-202-202	LS7	202-202-202	20	R7																																																				

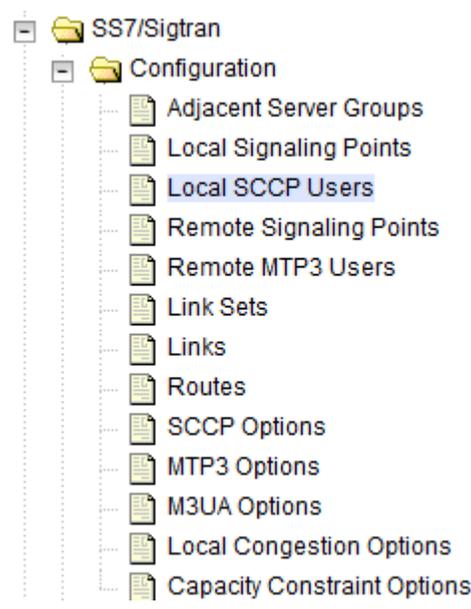
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Delete SS7-MP Links</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; SS7/Sigtran -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Links</b></p>  <p><b>Delete</b> the associated links of the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Link Name</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Link Set</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Association</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L1</td> <td>LS1</td> <td>pc9111729_046</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0f0ff;"> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L2</td> <td>LS2</td> <td>pc9111729_0461</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L3</td> <td>LS3</td> <td>pc9111729_0462</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L4</td> <td>LS4</td> <td>pc9111729_0463</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L5</td> <td>LS5</td> <td>pc9111729_1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>L6</td> <td>LS6</td> <td>pc9111729_11</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	Link Name	Link Set	Association	ZombieSOAM	L1	LS1	pc9111729_046	ZombieSOAM	L2	LS2	pc9111729_0461	ZombieSOAM	L3	LS3	pc9111729_0462	ZombieSOAM	L4	LS4	pc9111729_0463	ZombieSOAM	L5	LS5	pc9111729_1	ZombieSOAM	L6	LS6	pc9111729_11
Signaling Network Element Name	Link Name	Link Set	Association																										
ZombieSOAM	L1	LS1	pc9111729_046																										
ZombieSOAM	L2	LS2	pc9111729_0461																										
ZombieSOAM	L3	LS3	pc9111729_0462																										
ZombieSOAM	L4	LS4	pc9111729_0463																										
ZombieSOAM	L5	LS5	pc9111729_1																										
ZombieSOAM	L6	LS6	pc9111729_11																										

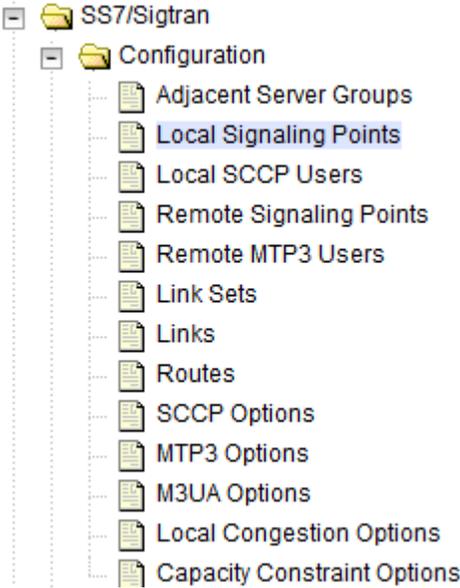
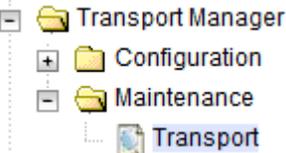
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Delete SS7-MP Link Sets</p>	<p align="center"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; SS7/Sigtran -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Link Sets</b></p>  <p><b>Delete</b> the associated link sets of the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th>Link Set Name</th> <th>Mode</th> <th>Local Signaling Point</th> <th>SS7 Domain</th> <th>LSP Point Code</th> <th>Adjacent Remote Point Code</th> <th>Routing Context</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>LS1</td> <td>AS-&gt;SG</td> <td>ANSI_100_100_100</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>All</td> <td>200-200-200</td> <td>----</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>LS2</td> <td>AS-&gt;SG</td> <td>ANSI_111_111_111</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>All</td> <td>200-200-200</td> <td>----</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0f0ff;"> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>LS3</td> <td>AS-&gt;SG</td> <td>ANSI_100_100_100</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>All</td> <td>201-201-201</td> <td>----</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>LS4</td> <td>AS-&gt;SG</td> <td>ANSI_111_111_111</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>All</td> <td>201-201-201</td> <td>----</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>LS5</td> <td>AS-&gt;SG</td> <td>ANSI_100_100_100</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>All</td> <td>202-202-202</td> <td>----</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>LS6</td> <td>AS-&gt;SG</td> <td>ANSI_111_111_111</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>All</td> <td>202-202-202</td> <td>----</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	Link Set Name	Mode	Local Signaling Point	SS7 Domain	LSP Point Code	Adjacent Remote Point Code	Routing Context	ZombieSOAM	LS1	AS->SG	ANSI_100_100_100	ANSI	All	200-200-200	----	ZombieSOAM	LS2	AS->SG	ANSI_111_111_111	ANSI	All	200-200-200	----	ZombieSOAM	LS3	AS->SG	ANSI_100_100_100	ANSI	All	201-201-201	----	ZombieSOAM	LS4	AS->SG	ANSI_111_111_111	ANSI	All	201-201-201	----	ZombieSOAM	LS5	AS->SG	ANSI_100_100_100	ANSI	All	202-202-202	----	ZombieSOAM	LS6	AS->SG	ANSI_111_111_111	ANSI	All	202-202-202	----
Signaling Network Element Name	Link Set Name	Mode	Local Signaling Point	SS7 Domain	LSP Point Code	Adjacent Remote Point Code	Routing Context																																																			
ZombieSOAM	LS1	AS->SG	ANSI_100_100_100	ANSI	All	200-200-200	----																																																			
ZombieSOAM	LS2	AS->SG	ANSI_111_111_111	ANSI	All	200-200-200	----																																																			
ZombieSOAM	LS3	AS->SG	ANSI_100_100_100	ANSI	All	201-201-201	----																																																			
ZombieSOAM	LS4	AS->SG	ANSI_111_111_111	ANSI	All	201-201-201	----																																																			
ZombieSOAM	LS5	AS->SG	ANSI_100_100_100	ANSI	All	202-202-202	----																																																			
ZombieSOAM	LS6	AS->SG	ANSI_111_111_111	ANSI	All	202-202-202	----																																																			

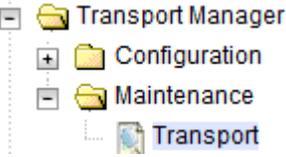
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

7	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Delete SS7-MP Local SCCP Users</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; SS7/Sigtran -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Local SCCP Users</b></p>  <p><b>Delete</b> the associated Local SCCP Users from the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th rowspan="2">SSN</th> <th colspan="2">Local Signaling Point</th> <th rowspan="2">Application Name</th> </tr> <tr> <th>SS7 Domain</th> <th>Point Code</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>248</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>100-100-100</td> <td>MAPIWF</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0f0ff;"> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>249</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>111-111-111</td> <td>MAPIWF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>250</td> <td>ITUI</td> <td>1-100-1</td> <td>MAPIWF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>251</td> <td>ITUI</td> <td>1-101-1</td> <td>MAPIWF</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	SSN	Local Signaling Point		Application Name	SS7 Domain	Point Code	ZombieSOAM	248	ANSI	100-100-100	MAPIWF	ZombieSOAM	249	ANSI	111-111-111	MAPIWF	ZombieSOAM	250	ITUI	1-100-1	MAPIWF	ZombieSOAM	251	ITUI	1-101-1	MAPIWF
Signaling Network Element Name	SSN	Local Signaling Point			Application Name																								
		SS7 Domain	Point Code																										
ZombieSOAM	248	ANSI	100-100-100	MAPIWF																									
ZombieSOAM	249	ANSI	111-111-111	MAPIWF																									
ZombieSOAM	250	ITUI	1-100-1	MAPIWF																									
ZombieSOAM	251	ITUI	1-101-1	MAPIWF																									

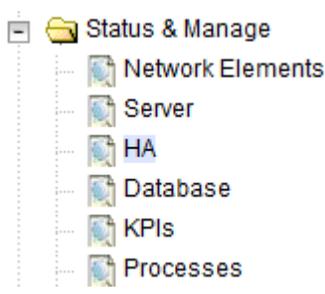
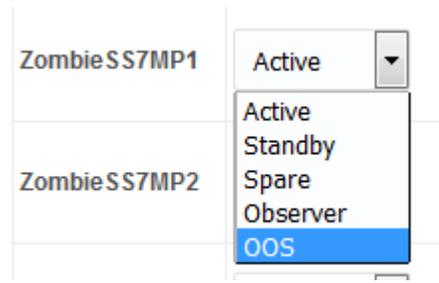
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Delete SS7-MP Local Signaling Points</p>	<p align="center"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; SS7/Sigtran -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Local Signaling Points</b></p>  <p><b>Delete</b> the associated Local signaling points from the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th>Local Signaling Point Name</th> <th>SS7 Domain</th> <th>MTP True Point Code</th> <th>MTP Capability Point Code(s)</th> <th>ServerGr</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI_100_100_100</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>100-100-100</td> <td>---</td> <td>Zomt</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ANSI_111_111_111</td> <td>ANSI</td> <td>111-111-111</td> <td>---</td> <td>Zomt</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ITU_1_100_1</td> <td>ITU</td> <td>1-100-1</td> <td>---</td> <td>Zomt</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ITU_1_101_1</td> <td>ITU</td> <td>1-101-1</td> <td>---</td> <td>Zomt</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	Local Signaling Point Name	SS7 Domain	MTP True Point Code	MTP Capability Point Code(s)	ServerGr	ZombieSOAM	ANSI_100_100_100	ANSI	100-100-100	---	Zomt	ZombieSOAM	ANSI_111_111_111	ANSI	111-111-111	---	Zomt	ZombieSOAM	ITU_1_100_1	ITU	1-100-1	---	Zomt	ZombieSOAM	ITU_1_101_1	ITU	1-101-1	---	Zomt			
Signaling Network Element Name	Local Signaling Point Name	SS7 Domain	MTP True Point Code	MTP Capability Point Code(s)	ServerGr																													
ZombieSOAM	ANSI_100_100_100	ANSI	100-100-100	---	Zomt																													
ZombieSOAM	ANSI_111_111_111	ANSI	111-111-111	---	Zomt																													
ZombieSOAM	ITU_1_100_1	ITU	1-100-1	---	Zomt																													
ZombieSOAM	ITU_1_101_1	ITU	1-101-1	---	Zomt																													
<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Disable SS7-MP transports</p>	<p align="center"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Transport Manager -&gt; Maintenance -&gt; Transport</b></p>  <p><b>Disable</b> the associated transports from the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th>MP Server Hostname</th> <th>Adapter</th> <th>Transport Name</th> <th>Transport Protocol</th> <th>Transport Type</th> <th>Adjacent Node</th> <th>Admin State</th> <th>Operational Status</th> <th>Operational Reason</th> <th>Up/Down Since</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP1</td> <td>M3UA</td> <td>pc9111729_046</td> <td>SCTP</td> <td>Initiator</td> <td>pc9111729_net046</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>2016-08-10 09:57:25 EC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP2</td> <td>M3UA</td> <td>pc9111729_0461</td> <td>SCTP</td> <td>Initiator</td> <td>pc9111729_net0461</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>2016-08-10 10:02:36 EC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	MP Server Hostname	Adapter	Transport Name	Transport Protocol	Transport Type	Adjacent Node	Admin State	Operational Status	Operational Reason	Up/Down Since	ZombieSOAM	ZombieSS7MP1	M3UA	pc9111729_046	SCTP	Initiator	pc9111729_net046	Disabled	Down	Disabled	2016-08-10 09:57:25 EC	ZombieSOAM	ZombieSS7MP2	M3UA	pc9111729_0461	SCTP	Initiator	pc9111729_net0461	Disabled	Down	Disabled	2016-08-10 10:02:36 EC
Signaling Network Element Name	MP Server Hostname	Adapter	Transport Name	Transport Protocol	Transport Type	Adjacent Node	Admin State	Operational Status	Operational Reason	Up/Down Since																								
ZombieSOAM	ZombieSS7MP1	M3UA	pc9111729_046	SCTP	Initiator	pc9111729_net046	Disabled	Down	Disabled	2016-08-10 09:57:25 EC																								
ZombieSOAM	ZombieSS7MP2	M3UA	pc9111729_0461	SCTP	Initiator	pc9111729_net0461	Disabled	Down	Disabled	2016-08-10 10:02:36 EC																								

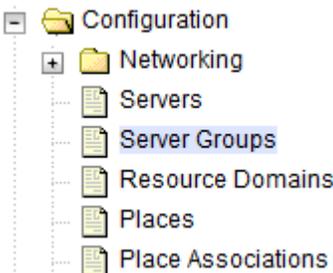
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

<p>10</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Delete SS7-MP transports</p>	<p align="center"><b>Execute this step if Removing SS7MP, otherwise skip to step 11</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Transport Manager -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Transport</b></p>  <p><b>Delete</b> the associated transports from the identified SS7-MP:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Signaling Network Element Name</th> <th>MP Server Hostname</th> <th>Adapter</th> <th>Transport Name</th> <th>Transport Protocol</th> <th>Transport Type</th> <th>Adjacent Node</th> <th>Admin State</th> <th>Operational Status</th> <th>Operational Reason</th> <th>Up/Down Since</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP1</td> <td>M3UA</td> <td>pc9111729_046</td> <td>SCTP</td> <td>Initiator</td> <td>pc9111729_net046</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>2016-08-10 09:57:25 EDT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>ZombieSS7MP2</td> <td>M3UA</td> <td>pc9111729_0461</td> <td>SCTP</td> <td>Initiator</td> <td>pc9111729_net0461</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>Down</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td>2016-08-10 10:02:36 EDT</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Signaling Network Element Name	MP Server Hostname	Adapter	Transport Name	Transport Protocol	Transport Type	Adjacent Node	Admin State	Operational Status	Operational Reason	Up/Down Since	ZombieSOAM	ZombieSS7MP1	M3UA	pc9111729_046	SCTP	Initiator	pc9111729_net046	Disabled	Down	Disabled	2016-08-10 09:57:25 EDT	ZombieSOAM	ZombieSS7MP2	M3UA	pc9111729_0461	SCTP	Initiator	pc9111729_net0461	Disabled	Down	Disabled	2016-08-10 10:02:36 EDT
Signaling Network Element Name	MP Server Hostname	Adapter	Transport Name	Transport Protocol	Transport Type	Adjacent Node	Admin State	Operational Status	Operational Reason	Up/Down Since																									
ZombieSOAM	ZombieSS7MP1	M3UA	pc9111729_046	SCTP	Initiator	pc9111729_net046	Disabled	Down	Disabled	2016-08-10 09:57:25 EDT																									
ZombieSOAM	ZombieSS7MP2	M3UA	pc9111729_0461	SCTP	Initiator	pc9111729_net0461	Disabled	Down	Disabled	2016-08-10 10:02:36 EDT																									
<p>11</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p><b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> </div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>  <p align="center">Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p align="center">This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p align="center">Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr/> <p align="center"><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p align="center"><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>																																	

**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

<p>12</p> <p>☐</p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b></p> <p><b>GUI:</b> Set Server to OOS</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; HA</b></p>  <p>Click <b>Edit</b></p> <p>Set the server's <i>Max Allowed HA Role</i> to <b>OOS</b></p>  <p>Click <b>Ok</b></p>
--------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

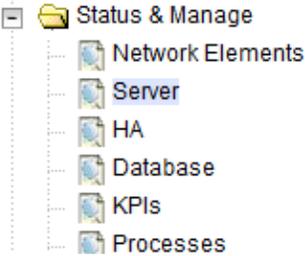
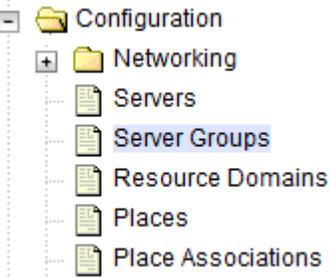
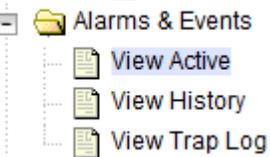
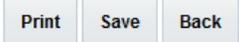
**Appendix L.2.3 Removing Server from Server Group**

13	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Remove Server From Server Group</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select the server group for which the server from <b>step 2</b> that was placed OOS.</p> <p>Click <b>Edit</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; display: flex; gap: 10px;"> <span>Insert</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Delete</span> <span>Report</span> </div> <p>Uncheck the server from <b>step 2</b> from the <i>SG Inclusion</i> column:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;">Server Group Name *</td> <td style="width: 20%;">ZombieSS7SG1</td> <td style="width: 50%;">Unique identifier used to label a with a digit.] [A value is required.]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Level *</td> <td>C</td> <td>Select one of the Levels support</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Parent *</td> <td>ZombieSOAM</td> <td>Select an existing Server Group [</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Function *</td> <td>SS7-IWF</td> <td>Select one of the Functions supp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN Replication Connection Count</td> <td>1</td> <td>Specify the number of TCP conn</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">ZombieSOAM <input type="checkbox"/> Prefer Network Element as spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: left;">Server</td> <td style="text-align: center;">SG Inclusion</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Preferred HA Role</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZombieSS7MP1</td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">VIP Assianment</td> </tr> </table> <p>Click <b>Ok</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; display: flex; gap: 10px;"> <span>Ok</span> <span>Apply</span> <span>Cancel</span> </div>	Server Group Name *	ZombieSS7SG1	Unique identifier used to label a with a digit.] [A value is required.]	Level *	C	Select one of the Levels support	Parent *	ZombieSOAM	Select an existing Server Group [	Function *	SS7-IWF	Select one of the Functions supp	WAN Replication Connection Count	1	Specify the number of TCP conn	ZombieSOAM <input type="checkbox"/> Prefer Network Element as spare			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	ZombieSS7MP1	<input type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare	VIP Assianment		
Server Group Name *	ZombieSS7SG1	Unique identifier used to label a with a digit.] [A value is required.]																											
Level *	C	Select one of the Levels support																											
Parent *	ZombieSOAM	Select an existing Server Group [																											
Function *	SS7-IWF	Select one of the Functions supp																											
WAN Replication Connection Count	1	Specify the number of TCP conn																											
ZombieSOAM <input type="checkbox"/> Prefer Network Element as spare																													
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role																											
ZombieSS7MP1	<input type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Prefer server as spare																											
VIP Assianment																													

**Appendix L.2.7 Post Growth Health Check**

<p><b>S T E P #</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide steps verify system status and log all alarms after Growth.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Login</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <hr/> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2016, <a href="#">Oracle</a> and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p>

**Appendix L.2.7 Post Growth Health Check**

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify Server Status</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Server</b></p>  <p>Verify all Server Status is Normal (Norm) for: Alarm (Alm), Database (DB), Replication Status, and Processes (Proc).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Appl State</th> <th>Alm</th> <th>DB</th> <th>Reporting Status</th> <th>Proc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enabled</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>Norm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Appl State	Alm	DB	Reporting Status	Proc	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm	Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm
Appl State	Alm	DB	Reporting Status	Proc																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
Enabled	Norm	Norm	Norm	Norm																							
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify Server Configuration</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Verify the configuration data is correct for your network.</p>																									
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Log Current Alarms</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Alarms &amp; Events -&gt; View Active</b></p>  <p>Click on the <b>Report</b> button</p>  <p><b>Save</b> or <b>Print</b> this report, keep copies for future reference.</p>  <p>Compare this alarm report with those gathered in procedure <b>Appendix L.1.2</b></p>																									

**Appendix L.2.7 Post Growth Health Check**

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Repeat	Repeat <b>Steps 1-3</b> for the SOAM
-------------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------------------

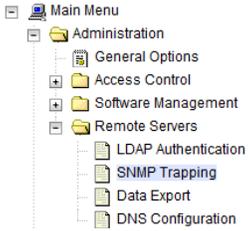
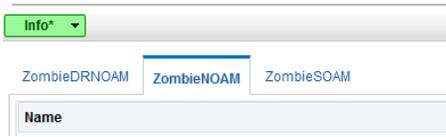
**Appendix L.1.8 Post Growth Backups**

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will reference steps to backup all necessary items after a growth scenario.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup TVOE</b>	Backup all TVOE host configurations by executing <b>Procedure</b>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup PMAC</b>	Backup the PMAC application by executing <b>Procedure 4</b>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup NOAM/SOAM databases</b>	Backup the NOAM and SOAM Databases by executing <b>Procedure 4</b> and <b>Procedure 4</b>

## Appendix O: Restoring SNMP configuration to SNMPv3 (Optional)

<p><b>S</b></p> <p><b>T</b></p> <p><b>E</b></p> <p><b>P</b></p> <p><b>#</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to restore SNMP configuration to SNMPv3 for forwarding of SNMP Traps from each individual server.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If SNMP is configured with SNMPv2c and SNMPv3 as enabled versions as a work around step (section 4.5, steps 6-9) and the SNMPv3 is required to be configured</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>(Workaround)</b></p> <p><b>PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p>	<p><b>NOTE:</b> This workaround step should be performed only in the following case:</p> <p>1) If SNMP is configured with SNMPv2c and SNMPv3 as enabled versions as a work around step (section 4.5, steps 6-9) and the SNMPv3 is required to be configured</p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI VIP IP address. Open the web browser and enter a URL of &lt;NOAM_XMI_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</p> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>This application is designed to work with most modern HTML5 compliant browsers and uses both JavaScript and cookies. Please refer to the <a href="#">Oracle Software Web Browser Support Policy</a> for details.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited.</p> <p>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p> <p>Copyright © 2010, 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure System-Wide SNMP Trap Receiver(s)</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Remote Servers -&gt; SNMP Trapping</b></p>  <p>Select the Server Group tab for SNMP trap configuration (The Server Group that is configured for SNMPv2c &amp; SNMPv3 as a workaround): <b>Main Menu: Administration -&gt; Remote Servers</b></p>  <p>Edit</p>  <p>Update the Enabled Versions as <b>SNMPv3</b>:</p>  <p>Press <b>OK</b></p>
------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Appendix P: My Oracle Support (MOS)

MOS (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration.

Call the CAS main number at **1-800-223-1711** (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>.

When calling, there are multiple layers of menus selections. Make the selections in the sequence shown below on the Support telephone menu:

- 1) For the first set of menu options, select 2, "New Service Request". You will hear another set of menu options.
- 2) In this set of menu options, select 3, "Hardware, Networking and Solaris Operating System Support". A third set of menu options begins.
- 3) In the third set of options, select 2, "Non-technical issue". Then you will be connected to a live agent who can assist you with MOS registration and provide Support. Identifiers. Simply mention you are a Tekelec Customer new to MOS.